



# Water Resources Act 1991

## 1991 CHAPTER 57

### PART I

#### PRELIMINARY

#### CHAPTER I

##### THE NATIONAL RIVERS AUTHORITY

**F1** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F1** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F2** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F2** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F3** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F3** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F4** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F4** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F5** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F5** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1996 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**CHAPTER II**

**COMMITTEES WITH FUNCTIONS IN RELATION TO THE AUTHORITY**

*Advisory committees*

**F6** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F6** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22, para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F7** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F7** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22, para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F8** .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F8** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22, para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Flood defence committees*

**F9** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F9** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22, para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F10** 10 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F10** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F11** 11 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F11** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F12** 12 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F12** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22, para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F13** 13 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F13** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F14</sup>14 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F14** Ss. 1-14 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 129, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### CHAPTER III

#### GENERAL DUTIES

#### 15 General duties with respect to the water industry.

- (1) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F15</sup>Agency], in exercising any of its powers under any enactment, to have particular regard to the duties imposed, by virtue of the provisions of Parts II to IV of the <sup>M1</sup>Water Industry Act 1991, on any water undertaker or sewerage undertaker which appears to the [<sup>F15</sup>Agency] to be or to be likely to be affected by the exercise of the power in question.
- (2) It shall be the duty of each of the Ministers, in exercising—
  - (a) any power conferred by virtue of [<sup>F16</sup>the 1995 Act,]this Act, the <sup>M2</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991, the Water Industry Act 1991 or the <sup>M3</sup>Water Act 1989 in relation to, or to decisions of, the [<sup>F15</sup>Agency]; or
  - (b) any power which, but for any direction given by one of the Ministers, would fall to be exercised by the [<sup>F15</sup>Agency],
 to take into account the duty imposed on the [<sup>F15</sup>Agency] by subsection (1) above.

**Textual Amendments**

**F15** Word in s. 15 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F16** Words in s. 15(2)(a) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 130** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**Marginal Citations**

**M1** 1991 c. 56.  
**M2** 1991 c. 59.  
**M3** 1989 c. 15.

<sup>F17</sup>16 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F17** Ss. 16-19 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22, para. 131, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F18</sup>17 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F18** Ss. 16-19 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22, para. 131, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

<sup>F19</sup>18 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F19** Ss. 16-19 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, **s. 120**, Sch. 22, para. 131, Sch. 24 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

## PART II

### WATER RESOURCES MANAGEMENT

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C1** Pt. II: transfer of functions to the Environment Agency (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, **s. 2(1)(a)(i)** (with ss. 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

## CHAPTER I

### GENERAL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

#### 19 **General management of resources by the [<sup>F20</sup>Agency.]**

- (1) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F21</sup>Agency] to take all such action as it may from time to time consider, in accordance (if any have been given for the purposes of this section) with the directions of the Secretary of State, to be necessary or expedient for the purpose—
  - (a) of conserving, redistributing or otherwise augmenting water resources in England and Wales; and
  - (b) of securing the proper use of water resources in England and Wales.
- (2) Nothing in this section shall be construed as relieving any water undertaker of the obligation to develop water resources for the purpose of performing any duty imposed on it by virtue of section 37 of the <sup>M4</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 (general duty to maintain water supply system).

**Textual Amendments**

**F20** Words in s. 19 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F21** Words in s. 19 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M4** 1991 c. 56.

## 20 Water resources management schemes.

- (1) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F22</sup>Agency] so far as reasonably practicable to enter into and maintain such arrangements with water undertakers for securing the proper management or operation of—
- (a) the waters which are available to be used by water undertakers for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying out of their functions; and
  - (b) any reservoirs, apparatus or other works which belong to, are operated by or are otherwise under the control of water undertakers for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying out of their functions,
- as the [<sup>F22</sup>Agency] from time to time considers appropriate for the purpose of carrying out its functions under [<sup>F23</sup>section 6(2) of the 1995 Act].
- (2) Without prejudice to the power of the [<sup>F22</sup>Agency] and any water undertaker to include any such provision as may be agreed between them in arrangements under this section, such arrangements may—
- (a) make provision by virtue of subsection (1)(a) above with respect to the construction or installation of any reservoirs, apparatus or other works which will be used by the undertaker in the carrying out of its functions;
  - (b) contain provision requiring payments to be made by the [<sup>F22</sup>Agency] to the undertaker; and
  - (c) require the reference to and determination by the Secretary of State or the [<sup>F24</sup>Water Services Regulation Authority ] of questions arising under the arrangements.
- (3) The [<sup>F22</sup>Agency] shall send a copy of any arrangements entered into by it under this section to the Secretary of State; and the obligations of a water undertaker by virtue of any such arrangements shall be enforceable under section 18 of the <sup>M5</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 (enforcement orders) by the Secretary of State.

#### Textual Amendments

**F22** Words in s. 20 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F23** Words in s. 20(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 132** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F24** Words in s. 20(2)(c) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(2)**; S.I. 2005/2714, art. 4(f) (with Sch. para. 8)

#### Marginal Citations

**M5** 1991 c. 56

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F25</sup>**20A Water resources management schemes: other abstractors**

- (1) The Agency may enter into and maintain such arrangements with holders of abstraction licences other than water undertakers for securing the proper management or operation of—
  - (a) the waters from which they have the right by virtue of their licences to abstract water; and
  - (b) any reservoirs, apparatus or other works which are used for the purposes of or in connection with their abstractions and which belong to them, are operated by them or are otherwise under their control,as the Agency from time to time considers appropriate for the purpose of carrying out its functions under section 6(2) of the 1995 Act.
- (2) Without prejudice to the power of the Agency and any holder of an abstraction licence to include any such provision as may be agreed between them in arrangements under this section, such arrangements may—
  - (a) make provision by virtue of subsection (1)(a) above with respect to the construction or installation of any reservoirs, apparatus or other works which the holder of the licence will use for the purposes of or in connection with his abstraction;
  - (b) contain provision requiring payments to be made by the Agency to the holder of the licence; and
  - (c) require the reference to and determination by the Secretary of State or the Water Services Regulation Authority of questions arising under the arrangements.
- (3) The Agency shall send a copy of any arrangements entered into by it under this section to the Secretary of State.
- (4) In this section, references to abstraction licences are to licences under Chapter 2 of this Part to abstract water.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F25** S. 20A inserted (1.10.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 28, 105(3); S.I. 2004/2528, art. 2(b) (with [Sch. para. 8](#))

[<sup>F26</sup>**20B Water resources management schemes: referral to Secretary of State**

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) the Agency has sought to enter into arrangements acceptable to it under section 20 or 20A above, but is satisfied that the other party is unwilling to enter into such arrangements or to do so on terms appearing to the Agency to be reasonable; or
  - (b) having entered into such arrangements, the Agency has sought to renew or vary them but is satisfied that the other party is unwilling to do so or to do so on terms appearing to the Agency to be reasonable.
- (2) Where this section applies, the Agency may refer to the Secretary of State the question (as the case may be)—
  - (a) whether such arrangements should be entered into, and if so, on what terms; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) whether the arrangements should be renewed or varied (as the case may be), and if so, on what terms.
- (3) If the Secretary of State determines that arrangements should be entered into or (as the case may be) renewed or varied, such arrangements on the terms determined by the Secretary of State shall be enforceable—
  - (a) by civil proceedings by the Secretary of State for an injunction or for any other appropriate relief; and
  - (b) where the other party is a water undertaker, also under section 18 of the Water Industry Act 1991 (enforcement orders) by the Secretary of State.
- (4) The functions of the Secretary of State under subsection (2) above shall be treated for the purposes of section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals) as if they were functions to which paragraph (a) of subsection (1) of that section applied.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F26** S. 20B inserted (1.10.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 29(1)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/2528, art. 2(b) (with [Sch. para. 8](#))

### [<sup>F27</sup>20C Proposals for bulk supply arrangements

- (1) In the circumstances mentioned in subsection (2) below, the Agency may, in carrying out its functions under section 6(2) of the 1995 Act, propose to a qualifying person (within the meaning of section 40 of the Water Industry Act 1991) that he make an application under that section for a bulk supply of water from a water undertaker.
- (2) The circumstances referred to in subsection (1) above are that it appears to the Agency that such a bulk supply is necessary in order to secure the proper use of water resources.
- (3) The Agency shall not make such a proposal without first consulting the Water Services Regulation Authority.
- (4) The Agency may include in its proposal the period for which, and terms and conditions on which, the Agency considers it appropriate that the bulk supply should be given.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F27** S. 20C inserted (1.10.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 31(1)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/2528, art. 2(c) (with [Sch. para. 8](#))

### 21 Minimum acceptable flows.

- (1) The [<sup>F28</sup>Agency] may, if it thinks it appropriate to do so, submit a draft statement to the Secretary of State containing, in relation to any inland waters that are not discrete waters—
  - (a) provision for determining the minimum acceptable flow for those waters; or
  - (b) where any provision for determining such a flow is for the time being in force in relation to those waters, provision for amending that provision or for replacing it with different provision for determining the minimum acceptable flow for those waters.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The provision contained in any statement for determining the minimum acceptable flow for any inland waters shall, in relation to the inland waters to which it relates, set out—
  - (a) the control points at which the flow in the waters is to be measured;
  - (b) the method of measurement which is to be used at each control point; and
  - (c) the flow which is to be the minimum acceptable flow at each control point or, where appropriate, the flows which are to be the minimum acceptable flows at each such point for the different times or periods specified in the statement.
- (3) Before preparing so much of any draft statement under this section as relates to any particular inland waters, the [<sup>F28</sup>Agency] shall consult—
  - (a) any water undertaker having the right to abstract water from those waters;
  - (b) any other water undertaker having the right to abstract water from any related underground strata;
  - (c) the drainage board for any internal drainage district from which water is discharged into those waters or in which any part of those waters is situated;
  - (d) any navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority having functions in relation to those waters or any related inland waters;
  - (e) if those waters [<sup>F29</sup>are wholly or partly situated in Wales (or in an area of the sea adjoining either the coast of Wales or an area of sea forming part of Wales) and they] or any related inland waters are tidal waters in relation to which there is no such navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority, [<sup>F30</sup>the Secretary of State for Transport]; and
  - (f) any person authorised by a licence under Part I of the <sup>M6</sup>Electricity Act 1989 to generate electricity [<sup>F31</sup>who has a right to abstract water from those waters].
- (4) In determining the flow to be specified in relation to any inland waters under subsection (2)(c) above, the [<sup>F28</sup>Agency] shall have regard—
  - (a) to the flow of water in the inland waters from time to time;
  - (b) in the light of its duties under [<sup>F32</sup>sections 6(1), 7 and 8 of the 1995 Act], to the character of the inland waters and their surroundings; and
  - (c) to any water quality objectives established under Chapter I of Part III of this Act in relation to the inland waters or any other inland waters which may be affected by the flow in the inland waters in question.
- (5) The flow specified in relation to any inland waters under subsection (2)(c) above shall be not less than the minimum which, in the opinion of the [<sup>F28</sup>Agency], is needed for safeguarding the public health and for meeting (in respect of both quantity and quality of water)—
  - (a) the requirements of existing lawful uses of the inland waters, whether for agriculture, industry, water supply or other purposes; and
  - (b) the requirements, in relation to both those waters and other inland waters whose flow may be affected by changes in the flow of those waters, of navigation, fisheries or land drainage.
- (6) The provisions of Schedule 5 to this Act shall have effect with respect to draft statements under this section and with respect to the approval of statements submitted as draft statements.
- (7) The approval under Schedule 5 to this Act of a draft statement under this section shall bring into force, on the date specified in that approval, so much of that statement, as

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

approved, as contains provision for determining, amending or replacing the minimum acceptable flow for any inland waters.

- (8) For the purposes of subsection (3) above—
- (a) underground strata are related underground strata in relation to any inland waters if—
    - (i) a water undertaker has a right to abstract water from the strata; and
    - (ii) it appears to the [F28 Agency], having regard to the extent to which the level of water in the strata depends on the flow of those waters, that the exercise of that right may be substantially affected by so much of the draft statement in question as relates to those waters;
  - (b) inland waters are related inland waters in relation to any other inland waters, where it appears to the [F28 Agency] that changes in the flow of the other waters may affect the flow of the first-mentioned inland waters.
- (9) For the purposes of subsection (5) above the [F28 Agency] shall be entitled (but shall not be bound) to treat as lawful any existing use of any inland waters unless—
- (a) by a decision given in any legal proceedings, it has been held to be unlawful; and
  - (b) that decision has not been quashed or reversed;
- and in that subsection the reference to land drainage includes a reference to defence against water (including sea water), irrigation other than spray irrigation, warping and the provision of flood warning systems.

#### Textual Amendments

- F28** Words in s. 21 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F29** Words in s. 21(3)(e) inserted (26.1.1998) by S.I. 1997/2971, art. 6(1), Sch. paras. 18, **19(a)**
- F30** Words in s. 21(3)(e) substituted (25.11.2002) by S.I. 2002/2626, art. 20, **Sch. 2 para. 18(2)**
- F31** Words in s. 21(3)(f) added (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 133(1)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**
- F32** Words in s. 21(4)(b) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 133(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

- M6** 1989 c. 29.

## 22 Directions to the [F33 Agency] to consider minimum acceptable flow.

- (1) If the [F33 Agency] is directed by the Secretary of State to consider whether the minimum acceptable flow for any particular inland waters ought to be determined or reviewed, the [F33 Agency] shall consider that matter as soon as reasonably practicable after being directed to do so.
- (2) After considering any matter under subsection (1) above the [F33 Agency] shall submit to the Secretary of State with respect to the inland waters in question either—
  - (a) such a draft statement as is mentioned in subsection (1) of section 21 above; or
  - (b) a draft statement that no minimum acceptable flow ought to be determined for those waters or, as the case may require, that the minimum acceptable flow for those waters does not need to be changed.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and subsections (6) and (7) of that section shall apply in relation to a draft statement under this subsection as they apply in relation to a draft statement under that section.

- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of paragraph 4 of Schedule 5 to this Act, the power of the Secretary of State under that paragraph to alter a draft statement before approving it shall include power to substitute a statement containing or amending any such provision as is mentioned in subsection (2) of section 21 above for such a draft statement as is mentioned in subsection (2)(b) of this section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in s. 22 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### 23 Minimum acceptable level or volume of inland waters.

- (1) Where it appears to the [<sup>F34</sup>Agency], in the case of any particular inland waters, that it would be appropriate to measure the level or the volume (either instead of or in addition to the flow) the [<sup>F34</sup>Agency] may determine that sections 21 and 22 above shall apply in relation to those inland waters as if any reference to the flow were or, as the case may be, included a reference to the level or to the volume.
- (2) Where the [<sup>F34</sup>Agency] makes a determination under subsection (1) above with respect to any inland waters, any draft statement prepared for the purposes of section 21 or 22 above, in so far as it relates to those waters, shall state—
- whether the level or the volume is to be measured; and
  - whether it is to be measured instead of, or in addition to, the flow.
- (3) Chapter II of this Part shall apply in relation to any inland waters with respect to which a determination has been made under subsection (1) above as if any reference in that Chapter to the flow were, or (as the case may be) included, a reference to the level or, as the case may be, the volume.

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in s. 23 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

## CHAPTER II

### ABSTRACTION AND IMPOUNDING

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C2** Chapter II of Part II excluded (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 6(3) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- C3** Chapter II of Part II modified (18.12.1996) by 1996 c. 61, s. 52, **Sch. 15 Pt. III para. 11**
- C4** Pt. II Ch. II modified (22.3.2005) by Midland Metro (Wednesbury to Brierley Hill and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/927), **Sch. 11 para. 11** (with art. 51)



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C5** Pt. II Ch. II modified (26.8.2005) by River Tyne (Tunnels) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/2222), art. 1, **Sch. 10 para. 14** (with arts. 45(1), 48, Sch. 10 paras. 21, 29)
- C6** Pt. II Ch. II modified (19.3.2007) by Ouseburn Barrage Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/608), art. 1, **Sch. 6 para. 18** (with arts. 46-48, Sch. 6 paras. 17(5), 23)
- C7** Pt. II Ch. II modified (22.7.2008) by Crossrail Act 2008 (c. 18), **Sch. 17 para. 11**
- C8** Pt. II Ch. II modified (9.6.2009) by Nottingham Express Transit System Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1300), arts. 1, **71(12)** (with Sch. 13 para. 14(2), Sch. 14 para. 19, Sch. 16)
- C9** Pt. II Ch. II modified (20.7.2010) by The Network Rail (Nuneaton North Chord) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1721), art. 1, **Sch. 11 para. 12**
- C10** Pt. II Ch. II modified (27.8.2010) by The Llangollen and Corwen Railway Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/2136), art. 1(1), **Sch. 4 para. 12**
- C11** Pt. II Ch. II modified (1.9.2010) by The Port of Bristol (Deep Sea Container Terminal) Harbour Revision Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/2020), art. 1(2), **Sch. 6 para. 11(1)** (with arts. 18, 19)
- C12** Pt. II Ch. II modified (1.2.2011) by The River Mersey (Mersey Gateway Bridge) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/41), art. 1, **Sch. 10 para. 41(1)** (with art. 51, Sch. 10 paras. 6885)

### *Restrictions on abstraction and impounding*

#### **24 Restrictions on abstraction.**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this Chapter and to any drought order [<sup>F35</sup>or drought permit] under Chapter III of this Part, no person shall—
  - (a) abstract water from any source of supply; or
  - (b) cause or permit any other person so to abstract any water,
 except in pursuance of a licence under this Chapter granted by the [<sup>F36</sup>Agency] and in accordance with the provisions of that licence.
- (2) Where by virtue of subsection (1) above the abstraction of water contained in any underground strata is prohibited except in pursuance of a licence under this Chapter, no person shall begin, or cause or permit any other person to begin—
  - (a) to construct any well, borehole or other work by which water may be abstracted from those strata;
  - (b) to extend any such well, borehole or other work; or
  - (c) to instal or modify any machinery or apparatus by which additional quantities of water may be abstracted from those strata by means of a well, borehole or other work,
 unless the conditions specified in subsection (3) below are satisfied.
- (3) The conditions mentioned in subsection (2) above are—
  - (a) that the abstraction of the water or, as the case may be, of the additional quantities of water is authorised by a licence under this Chapter; and
  - (b) that—
    - (i) the well, borehole or work, as constructed or extended; or
    - (ii) the machinery or apparatus, as installed or modified,
 fulfils the requirements of that licence as to the means by which water is authorised to be abstracted.
- (4) A person shall be guilty of an offence if—
  - (a) he contravenes subsection (1) or (2) above; or



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) he is for the purposes of this section the holder of a licence under this Chapter and, in circumstances not constituting such a contravention, does not comply with a condition or requirement imposed by the provisions, as for the time being in force, of that licence.
- (5) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding [<sup>F37</sup>£20,000] ;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.
- (6) The restrictions imposed by this section shall have effect notwithstanding anything in any enactment contained in any Act passed before the passing of the <sup>M7</sup>Water Resources Act 1963 on 31st July 1963 or in any statutory provision made or issued, whether before or after the passing of that Act, by virtue of such an enactment.

#### Textual Amendments

- F35** By S.I. 1996/593, reg. 3, **Sch. 2 para. 8** it is provided that the words “or drought permit” be substituted (1.4.1996) for the words following “drought order”
- F36** Word in s. 24(1) substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F37** Word in s. 24(5)(a) substituted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 60(1), 105(3)** (with s. 60(2)); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(n)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C13** S. 24 excluded (15.1.2010) by The Eels (England and Wales) Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/3344), regs. 1(b), **21(1)** (with reg. 1(d))
- C14** S. 24(1) restricted (16.3.1992) by Aire and Calder Navigation Act 1992 (c. iv), **s. 17(2)**
- C15** S. 24(1) restricted (22.7.2008) by Crossrail Act 2008 (c. 18), **Sch. 14 para. 15**

#### Marginal Citations

- M7** 1963 c. 38.

### [<sup>F38</sup>24A Abstraction licences

- (1) Each licence to abstract water shall be of one of the following three types—
- (a) a licence to abstract water from one source of supply over a period of twenty-eight days or more for any purpose (a “full licence”);
  - (b) a licence to abstract water from one source of supply over a period of twenty-eight days or more for the purpose of—
    - (i) transferring water to another source of supply; or
    - (ii) transferring water to the same source of supply, but at another point, in the course of dewatering activities in connection with mining, quarrying, engineering, building or other operations (whether underground or on the surface),in either case without intervening use (a “transfer licence”);
  - (c) a licence to abstract water from one source of supply over a period of less than twenty-eight days (a “temporary licence”).
- (2) In this Act, a reference (however expressed) to a licence to abstract water is to be taken as a reference to all types of licence, unless it is clear that a different meaning is intended.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F38** S. 24A inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 1(1)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(a) (with [Sch. paras. 1, 2](#))

## 25 Restrictions on impounding.

[<sup>F39</sup>(1) Subject to the following provisions of this Chapter and to any drought order or drought permit under Chapter 3 of this Part, no person shall—

- (a) begin, or cause or permit any other person to begin, to construct or alter any impounding works at any point in any inland waters which are not discrete waters; or
- (b) cause or permit the flow of any inland waters which are not discrete waters to be obstructed or impeded at any point by means of impounding works,

unless (in either case) the conditions mentioned in subsection (1A) below are satisfied.

(1A) The conditions are—

- (a) a licence under this Chapter granted by the Agency to obstruct or impede the flow of those inland waters at that point by means of impounding works is in force;
- (b) the impounding works will not (or, as the case may be, do not) obstruct or impede the flow of the inland waters except to the extent, and in the manner, authorised by the licence; and
- (c) any other conditions or requirements imposed by the provisions, as for the time being in force, of the licence (whether as to the provision of compensation water or otherwise) are complied with.]

(2) A person shall be guilty of an offence if—

- (a) he contravenes subsection (1) above; or
- (b) he is for the purposes of this section the holder of a licence under this Chapter and<sup>F40</sup>...does not comply with a condition or requirement imposed by the provisions, as for the time being in force, of that licence.

(3) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable—

- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding [<sup>F41</sup>£20,000] ;
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

(4) Subject to subsection (5) below, the restrictions imposed by this section shall have effect notwithstanding anything in any enactment contained in any Act passed before the passing of the <sup>M8</sup>Water Resources Act 1963 on 31st July 1963 or in any statutory provision made or issued, whether before or after the passing of that Act, by virtue of such an enactment.

(5) Subject to subsection (6) below, the restriction on impounding works [<sup>F42</sup>shall not apply in respect of any impounding works] , if—

- (a) the construction or alteration of those works; or
- (b) the obstruction or impeding of the flow of the inland waters resulting from the construction or alteration of the works,

is authorised (in whatsoever terms, and whether expressly or by implication) by virtue of any such statutory provision as at the coming into force of this Act was an alternative statutory provision for the purposes of section 36(2) of the Water Resources Act 1963.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The provisions of this Chapter shall have effect in accordance with subsection (7) below where by virtue of any such provision as is mentioned in subsection (5) above and is for the time being in force—
- (a) any water undertaker or sewerage undertaker to which rights under that provision have been transferred in accordance with a scheme under Schedule 2 to the <sup>M9</sup>Water Act 1989 or Schedule 2 to the <sup>M10</sup>Water Industry Act 1991; or
  - (b) any other person,
- is authorised (in whatsoever terms, and whether expressly or by implication) to obstruct or impede the flow of any inland waters by means of impounding works (whether those works have already been constructed or not).
- (7) Where subsection (6) above applies, the provisions of this Chapter shall have effect (with the necessary modifications), where the reference is to the revocation or variation of a licence under this Chapter, as if—
- (a) any reference in those provisions to a licence under this Chapter included a reference to the authorisation mentioned in that subsection; and
  - (b) any reference to the holder of such a licence included a reference to the undertaker or other person so mentioned.
- (8) In this Chapter “impounding works” means either of the following, that is to say—
- (a) any dam, weir or other works in any inland waters by which water may be impounded;
  - (b) any works for diverting the flow of any inland waters in connection with the construction or alteration of any dam, weir or other works falling within paragraph (a) above.
- [<sup>F43</sup>(9) In relation to impounding works, references to alteration include the removal or partial removal of those works, and cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F39** S. 25(1)(1A) substituted for s. 25(1) (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 2(2)**, 105(3) (with s. 2(10)); [S.I. 2006/984](#), art. 2(b) (with Sch. para. 2)
- F40** Words in s. 25(2) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 2(3)**, 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1** (with s. 2(10)); [S.I. 2006/984](#), art. 2(b)(s)(ii) (with Sch. para. 2)
- F41** Word in s. 25(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 60(1)**, 105(3) (with s. 60(2)); [S.I. 2004/641](#), art. 3(n) (with Sch. 3 para. 7)
- F42** Words in s. 25(5) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 2(4)**, 105(3) (with s. 2(10)); [S.I. 2006/984](#), art. 2(b) (with Sch. para. 2)
- F43** S. 25(9) added (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 2(5)**, 105(3) (with s. 2(10)); [S.I. 2006/984](#), art. 2(b) (with Sch. para. 2)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C16** S. 25 excluded (15.1.2010) by [The Eels \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3344\)](#), regs. 1(b), **21(1)** (with reg. 1(d))
- C17** S. 25(1)(b) modified (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 3**, 105(3); [S.I. 2006/984](#), art. 2(c) (with Sch. para. 2)

#### Marginal Citations

- M8** 1963 c. 38.  
**M9** 1989 c. 15.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**M10** 1991 c. 56.

## **[<sup>F44</sup>25A Enforcement notices**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, where it appears to the Agency that a person is—
  - (a) in breach of section 24(1) or (2) or section 25(1) above; or
  - (b) for the purposes of section 24 or 25 above a holder of a licence under this Chapter and has not complied with a condition or requirement imposed by the provisions, as for the time being in force, of that licence,
 the Agency shall be entitled to serve an enforcement notice on him if the condition in subsection (2) below is satisfied.
- (2) The condition is that it appears to the Agency that the breach or failure to comply is causing or is likely to cause significant damage to the environment.
- (3) An enforcement notice is a notice requiring the person on whom it is served—
  - (a) to cease his breach of section 24(1) or (2) or section 25(1) above, or to comply with the condition or requirement in question; and
  - (b) to carry out any works or operations specified in the notice.
- (4) The works or operations which may be specified are works or operations which it appears to the Agency are appropriate for the purpose of remedying or mitigating the effects of the breach or failure to comply, and may include—
  - (a) works or operations for the purpose, so far as it is reasonably practicable to do so, of restoring any affected waters, including any flora and fauna dependent on them, to their state immediately before the breach or failure to comply; and
  - (b) in the case of a breach of section 25(1) above, the removal of any unauthorised impounding works or the reversal of any unauthorised alteration to impounding works.
- (5) An enforcement notice must specify the periods within which the person on whom it is served must do each of the things specified in the notice.
- (6) Before serving an enforcement notice on any person, the Agency shall take reasonable steps to consult that person about the works or operations which are to be specified in the notice.
- (7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for or in connection with—
  - (a) the form or content of enforcement notices;
  - (b) requirements for consultation, before the service of an enforcement notice, with persons other than the person upon whom the notice is to be served;
  - (c) steps to be taken for the purposes of any consultation required under subsection (6) above or regulations made by virtue of paragraph (b) above;
  - (d) any other steps of a procedural nature which are to be taken in connection with, or in consequence of, the service of an enforcement notice.
- (8) An enforcement notice is not invalid, or invalidly served, merely because of a failure to comply with subsection (6) above or with regulations made by virtue of subsection (7) (b) above.
- (9) The Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit in relation to any person, give directions to the Agency as to whether or how it should exercise its powers under this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (10) In proceedings for any offence under section 24 or 25 above against a person upon whom an enforcement notice has been served, the following are not to be taken as evidence that he has committed the offence—
- (a) the fact that an enforcement notice has been served on him;
  - (b) the fact that he does not appeal against it;
  - (c) the fact that on an appeal against it the notice is confirmed (whether with or without modifications).

#### Textual Amendments

**F44** Ss. 25A-25C inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 30**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(o)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C18** S. 25A excluded (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), **26**

**C19** Ss. 25A(5)-(9) applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 4(3)(a)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(d)

## 25B Rights of entry and appeals

Sections 161B and 161C below (including any power to make regulations) shall apply in relation to enforcement notices as they apply in relation to works notices under section 161A below.

#### Textual Amendments

**F44** Ss. 25A-25C inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 30**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(o)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C20** S. 25B excluded (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), **26**

## 25C Consequences of not complying with an enforcement notice

- (1) If a person on whom the Agency serves an enforcement notice fails to comply with any of its requirements, he shall be guilty of an offence.
- (2) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) above shall be liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding £20,000;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.
- (3) If a person on whom an enforcement notice has been served fails to comply with any of its requirements, the Agency may do what that person was required to do and may recover from him any costs or expenses reasonably incurred by the Agency in doing it.
- (4) If the Agency is of the opinion that proceedings for an offence under subsection (1) above would afford an ineffectual remedy against a person who has failed to comply with the requirements of an enforcement notice, the Agency may take proceedings in the High Court for the purpose of securing compliance with the notice.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F44** Ss. 25A-25C inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 30**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(o)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C21** S. 25C excluded (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), **26**

### *Rights to abstract or impound*

## **26 Rights of navigation, harbour and conservancy authorities.**

- (1) The restriction on abstraction shall not apply to any transfer of water from one area of inland waters to another in the course of, or resulting from, any operations carried out by a navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority in the carrying out of their functions as such an authority.
- (2) The restriction on impounding works shall not apply to the construction or alteration of impounding works in the course of the performance by a navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority of their functions as such an authority.

## **[<sup>F45</sup>27 Rights to abstract small quantities.**

- (1) The restriction on abstraction shall not apply to any abstraction of a quantity of water not exceeding twenty cubic metres in any period of twenty-four hours, if the abstraction does not form part of a continuous operation, or of a series of operations, by which a quantity of water which, in aggregate, is more than twenty cubic metres is abstracted during the period.
- (2) In the case of any abstraction of water from underground strata which falls within subsection (1) above, the restriction imposed by section 24(2) above shall not apply—
  - (a) to the construction or extension of any well, borehole or other work; or
  - (b) to the installation or modification of machinery or other apparatus,
 if the well, borehole or other work is constructed or extended, or the machinery or apparatus is installed or modified, for the purpose of abstracting the water.
- (3) Where a person is authorised by a licence under this Chapter to carry on a particular abstraction operation (or series of operations), this section does not permit him to carry it on beyond the authorisation conferred by the licence.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F45** Ss 27, 27A substituted (1.4.2004 for the insertion of s. 27A, 1.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) for s. 27 by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 6(1)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(a) (with [Sch. 3 paras. 17](#)); S.I. 2005/968, art. 2(a)

## **27A Variation of small quantity threshold**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order made by statutory instrument provide that section 27(1) above is to have effect in relation to—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a geographical area; or
  - (b) a class of inland waters; or
  - (c) a class of underground strata; or
  - (d) a class of inland waters or of underground strata within a geographical area, (in each case as specified in the order) as if for “twenty cubic metres” there were substituted another quantity specified in the order.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall not make such an order except upon the application of the Agency; but he may direct the Agency to make such an application.
- (3) Such an order may—
  - (a) make different provision in relation to the different paragraphs in subsection (1) above; and
  - (b) make different provision for different areas, waters or underground strata.
- (4) Schedule 6 to this Act shall have effect with respect to applications for orders under subsection (1) above and with respect to the making of such orders.
- (5) An order under subsection (1) above which specifies a greater quantity than the one which previously had effect in relation to the area, waters or strata in question may make provision for a licence to abstract water granted under this Chapter—
  - (a) which is for the time being in force; but
  - (b) which by virtue of the order has become wholly or partly unnecessary, to cease to have effect, or to cease to have effect to the extent specified in the order.
- (6) An order under subsection (1) above may include provision for or in relation to the payment by the Agency of compensation, in cases specified in the order, to a person who—
  - (a) immediately before the making of an order under subsection (1) above, had been in a position to carry out an abstraction to which, by virtue of section 27(1) above, the restriction on abstraction did not apply;
  - (b) following the making of that order, requires a licence under this Chapter in order to carry out that abstraction; and
  - (c) has suffered loss or damage as a result of his having been—
    - (i) refused such a licence in respect of that abstraction; or
    - (ii) granted such a licence, but in respect of an abstraction of more limited extent than the one he had been in a position to carry out.
- (7) Paragraphs (e) and (f) of section 219(2) below apply in relation to orders under subsection (1) above as they apply to regulations made under this Act.
- (8) A statutory instrument containing an order under subsection (1) above shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F45** Ss 27, 27A substituted (1.4.2004 for the insertion of s. 27A, 1.4.2005 in so far as not already in force) for s. 27 by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), [ss. 6\(1\), 105\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2004/641](#), [art. 3\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 3 paras. 17](#)); [S.I. 2005/968](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 28 Curtailment of rights under section 27.

[<sup>F46</sup>(1) The provisions of this section shall have effect where a person (“the occupier”) is entitled, by virtue of subsection (6) of section 27 above, to a protected right for the purposes of this Chapter by reason of his being the occupier of such a holding as is mentioned in subsection (4) of that section in relation to an abstraction falling within that subsection (“the holding”).

(2) If it appears to the [<sup>F47</sup>Agency] that the occupier is entitled, as against other occupiers of land contiguous to the inland waters in question, to abstract water from those waters for use on part of the holding (“the relevant part”), but is not so entitled to abstract water for use on other parts of the holding—

- (a) the [<sup>F47</sup>Agency] may serve on him a notice specifying the relevant part of the holding; and
- (b) subject to the following provisions of this section, the notice shall have effect so as to require subsections (3) and (4) of section 27 above to be construed in relation to the holding as if the references in subsection (4) to use on the holding were references to use on the part of the holding specified in the notice.

(3) Where a notice is served under subsection (2) above and the occupier objects to the notice on the grounds—

- (a) that he is entitled, as against other occupiers of land contiguous to the inland waters in question, to abstract water from those waters for use on every part of the holding; or
- (b) that he is so entitled to abstract water for use on a larger part of the holding than that specified in the notice,

he may, within such period (not being less than twenty-eight days from the date of service of the notice) and in such manner as may be prescribed, appeal to the court against the notice.

(4) On any appeal under subsection (3) above, the court shall determine the matter in dispute and, in accordance with its decision, confirm, quash or vary the [<sup>F47</sup>Agency’s] notice and—

- (a) where the court quashes a notice served under subsection (2) above, paragraph (b) of that subsection shall not have effect; and
- (b) where the court varies such a notice, that paragraph shall have effect, but with the substitution, for the reference to the part of the holding specified in the notice, of a reference to the part specified in the notice as varied by the court.

(5) In this section—

“the court” means the county court for the district in which the holding, or the part of the holding which is contiguous to the inland waters in question, is situated; and

“entitled” (except in subsection (1) above) means entitled apart from this Chapter or any other statutory provision.]

### Textual Amendments

**F46** S. 28 repealed (1.4.2005) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 6(2), 105(3), [Sch. 9 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2005/968, art. 2(a)(n)



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F47** Words in s. 28 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**29 Rights to abstract for drainage purposes etc.**

- (1) The restriction on abstraction shall not apply to any abstraction of water from a source of supply in the course of, or resulting from, any operations for purposes of land drainage.
- (2) The restriction on abstraction shall not apply to any abstraction of water from a source of supply in so far as the abstraction (where it does not fall within subsection (1) above) is necessary—
  - (a) to prevent interference with any mining, quarrying, engineering, building or other operations (whether underground or on the surface); or
  - (b) to prevent damage to works resulting from any such operations.
- (3) Where—
  - (a) water is abstracted, in the course of any such operations as are mentioned in subsection (2) above, from any excavation into underground strata in a case in which the level of water in the underground strata depends wholly or mainly on water entering it from those strata; and
  - (b) the abstraction is necessary as mentioned in that subsection,the exemption conferred by that subsection shall apply notwithstanding that the water is used for the purposes of the operations.
- (4) In the case of any abstraction of water from underground strata which falls within subsection (1) or (2) above, the restriction imposed by section 24(2) above shall not apply—
  - (a) to the construction or extension of any well, borehole or other work; or
  - (b) to the installation or modification of machinery or other apparatus,if the well, borehole or other work is constructed or extended, or the machinery or apparatus is installed or modified, for the purpose of abstracting the water.
- (5) In this section, “land drainage” includes the protection of land against erosion or encroachment by water, whether from inland waters or from the sea, and also includes warping and irrigation other than spray irrigation.

**F48 30 Notices with respect to borings not requiring licences.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F48** S. 30 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 8(3), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(e)(s)(ii) (with savings in [Sch. paras. 4, 5](#))

**F49 31 Appeals against conservation notices under section 30.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F49** S. 31 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 8(3), 105(3), [Sch. 9 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(e)(s)(ii) (with savings in [Sch. paras. 4, 5](#))

### 32 Miscellaneous rights to abstract.

- (1) The restriction on abstraction shall not apply to any abstraction by machinery or apparatus installed on a vessel, where the water is abstracted for use on that, or any other, vessel.
- (2) The restriction on abstraction and the other restrictions imposed by section 24 above shall not apply to the doing of anything—
  - (a) for [<sup>F50</sup>extinguishing fires or protecting life and property in the event of fire]; or
  - (b) for the purpose of testing apparatus used for [<sup>F51</sup>either of] those purposes or of training or practice in the use of such apparatus.
- (3) The restriction on abstraction and the other restrictions imposed by section 24 above shall not apply—
  - (a) to any abstraction of water;
  - (b) to the construction or extension of any well, borehole or other work; or
  - (c) to the installation or modification of machinery or other apparatus,
 if the abstraction, construction, extension, installation or modification is for any of the purposes specified in subsection (4) below and takes place with the consent of the [<sup>F52</sup>Agency] and in compliance with any conditions imposed by the [<sup>F52</sup>Agency].
- (4) The purposes mentioned in subsection (3) above are—
  - (a) the purpose of ascertaining the presence of water in any underground strata or the quality or quantity of any such water; and
  - (b) the purpose of ascertaining the effect of abstracting water from the well, borehole or other work in question on the abstraction of water from, or the level of water in, any other well, borehole or other work or any inland waters.

#### Textual Amendments

- F50** Words in s. 32(2)(a) substituted (1.10.2004 except in relation to W., 10.11.2004 for W.) by [Fire and Rescue Services Act 2004 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 1 para. 79\(a\)](#); S.I. 2004/2304, art. 2; S.I. 2004/2917, art. 2
- F51** Words in s. 32(2)(b) inserted (1.10.2004 except in relation to W., 10.11.2004 for W.) by [Fire and Rescue Services Act 2004 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 61, [Sch. 1 para. 79\(b\)](#); S.I. 2004/2304, art. 2; S.I. 2004/2917, art. 2
- F52** Words in s. 32 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120, [Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#)

### <sup>F53</sup>33 Power to provide for further rights to abstract.

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F53** S. 33 repealed with a saving (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 10(11), 105(3), [Sch. 9 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(c)(z)

## [<sup>F54</sup>33A Power to provide for further exemptions

- (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations providing for further cases in which—
  - (a) the restriction on abstraction (and, in the case of abstractions from underground strata, the other restrictions imposed by section 24 above); or
  - (b) the restriction on impounding works,shall not apply; and in this section such a case is referred to as an “exemption”.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision, in relation to an exemption—
  - (a) for the exemption to apply only for a prescribed period;
  - (b) for the exemption not to apply unless prescribed conditions are satisfied, or continue to be satisfied;
  - (c) for the Agency to be notified, or its consent obtained—
    - (i) before any particular abstraction operation or series of such operations begins; or
    - (ii) in connection with such an operation or series of operations relating to the abstraction of water in underground strata, before any other thing which is mentioned in section 24(2) above is done; or
    - (iii) before any impounding works are constructed or altered,in reliance on the exemption.
- (3) The regulations may provide for an exemption to apply generally or to relate to—
  - (a) a prescribed geographical area;
  - (b) a prescribed source of supply (in the case of an exemption from the restriction on abstraction or the other restrictions imposed by section 24 above); or
  - (c) prescribed inland waters (in the case of an exemption from the restriction on impounding works).
- (4) Subject to subsection (5) below, if regulations under this section provide for an exemption falling within subsection (1)(a) above, the regulations shall—
  - (a) if appropriate, make provision for the exemption not to permit a person who is authorised by a licence under this Chapter to carry on an abstraction operation (or series of operations) to carry it on beyond the authorisation conferred by the licence; and
  - (b) make provision as to whether or not, in relation to any abstraction, the exemption provided for by the regulations is to be counted cumulatively with any other exemption which a person has by virtue of this section or section 27 above.
- (5) The regulations may make provision for a licence granted under this Chapter and which is for the time being in force to cease to have effect, or to cease to have effect to the extent specified in the regulations, if it authorises an activity which falls to any extent within the exemption provided for by the regulations.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F54** S. 33A inserted (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 9, 105(3)**; S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(b)** (with [Sch. 3 paras. 17](#))

### *Applications for a licence*

#### **34 Regulations with respect to applications.**

- (1) Any application for a licence under this Chapter shall be made in such manner as may be prescribed, and shall include such particulars, [<sup>F55</sup>be accompanied by such reports, ] and be verified by such evidence, as may be prescribed.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the manner in which applications for the grant of licences under this Chapter are to be dealt with, including provision requiring the giving of notices of, and information relating to, the making of such applications or decisions on such applications [<sup>F56</sup>, and provision for making such applications available for public inspection.]
- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (2) above, provision shall be made by regulations under this section for securing that, in such circumstances as may be prescribed (being circumstances in which it appears to the Secretary of State that applications for licences under this Chapter would be of special concern to National Park <sup>F57</sup> . . . authorities)—
  - (a) notice of any such application will be given to such one or more National Park <sup>F57</sup> . . . authorities as may be determined in accordance with the regulations; and
  - (b) the matters to which the [<sup>F58</sup>Agen cy] or, as the case may be, the Secretary of State is to have regard in dealing with the application will include any representations made by any such National Park <sup>F57</sup> . . . authority within such period and in such manner as may be prescribed.
- (4) The preceding provisions of this section shall have effect subject to any express provision contained in, or having effect by virtue of, any other enactment contained in this Chapter; and any regulations made under this section shall have effect subject to any such express provision.

<sup>F59</sup>(5) . . . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F55** Words in s. 34(1) inserted (1.10.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 2(a)**; S.I. 2004/2528, **art. 2(t)(i)** (with [Sch. para. 8](#))
- F56** Words in s. 34(2) added (1.10.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 2(b)**; S.I. 2004/2528, **art. 2(t)(i)** (with [Sch. para. 8](#))
- F57** Words in s. 34 repealed (1.4.1997) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120(3), **Sch. 24** (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); S.I. 1996/2560, **art. 2, Sch.**
- F58** Words in s. 34 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F59** S. 34(5) repealed (1.4.1997) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120(3), **Sch. 24** (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); S.I. 1996/2560, **art. 2, Sch.**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **35 Restrictions on persons who may make applications for abstraction licences.**

- (1) No application for a licence under this Chapter to abstract water shall be entertained unless it is made by a person entitled to make the application in accordance with the following provisions of this section.
- <sup>F60</sup>(2) In relation to abstractions from any inland waters, a person shall be entitled to make the application if, as respects the place (or, if more than one, as respects each of the places) at which the proposed abstractions are to be effected, he satisfies the Agency that—
  - (a) he has, or at the time when the proposed licence is to take effect will have, a right of access to land contiguous to the inland waters at that place (or those places); and
  - (b) he will continue to have such a right for the period of at least one year beginning with the date on which the proposed licence is to take effect, or until it is to expire (if sooner).
- (3) In relation to abstractions from underground strata, a person shall be entitled to make the application if he satisfies the Agency that—
  - (a) he has, or at the time when the proposed licence is to take effect will have, a right of access to land consisting of or comprising those underground strata; and
  - (b) he will continue to have such a right for the period of at least one year beginning with the date on which the proposed licence is to take effect, or until it is to expire (if sooner).
- (3A) The Agency may, in particular, take evidence of a person's occupation of land to be evidence of his right of access to it.]
- (4) Any reference in this section to a person who <sup>F61</sup>will have a right of access to] land of any description—
  - (a) includes a reference to a person who satisfies the <sup>F62</sup>Agency] that he has entered into negotiations for the acquisition of an interest in land of that description such that, if the interest is acquired by him, he will be entitled to <sup>F63</sup>a right of access to ] that land; and
  - (b) without prejudice to the application of paragraph (a) above to a person who is or can be authorised to acquire land compulsorily, also includes any person who satisfies the <sup>F62</sup>Agency] that by virtue of any enactment, the compulsory acquisition by that person of land of that description either has been authorised or can be authorised and has been initiated.
- (5) In subsection (4) above the reference to initiating the compulsory acquisition of land by a person is a reference to—
  - (a) the submission to the relevant Minister of a draft of an order which, if made by that Minister in the form of the draft, will authorise that person to acquire that land compulsorily, with or without other land; or
  - (b) the submission to the relevant Minister of an order which, if confirmed by that Minister as submitted will authorise that person to acquire that land compulsorily, with or without other land.
- (6) In subsection (5) above “the relevant Minister”, in relation to the compulsory acquisition of land by any person, means the Minister who, in accordance with the enactment mentioned in subsection (4)(b) above, is empowered to authorise that person to acquire land compulsorily.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F60** S. 35(2)(3)(3A) substituted for s. 35(2)(3) (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 11(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(f) (with [Sch. paras. 67\(3\)](#))
- F61** Words in s. 35(4) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 11(3)(a)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(f) (with [Sch. paras. 67\(3\)](#))
- F62** Words in s. 35 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F63** Words in s. 35(4)(a) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 11(3)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(f) (with [Sch. paras. 67\(3\)](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C22** S. 35 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 8(1)**

### <sup>F64</sup>36 Application for combined abstraction and impounding licence.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F64** S. 36 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 12**, 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(g)(s)(ii) (with [Sch. paras. 1, 2](#))

### [<sup>F65</sup>36A Applications: types of abstraction licence

- (1) The Agency may decide that—
- (a) an application for a full licence, a transfer licence or a temporary licence ought to be for one of the other types of licence;
  - (b) a number of applications for licences (of any type or types) to abstract water from a particular source of supply ought to be treated as an application for a single such licence (of any type);
  - (c) an application for a single licence (of any type) to abstract water from a particular source of supply ought to be treated as a number of applications for such licences (of any type or types); or
  - (d) any such application as is referred to above ought to be accompanied by an application for revocation of an existing licence to abstract water.
- (2) The Agency may arrive at the decision referred to in paragraph (a), (b), (c) or (d) of subsection (1) above on the basis of its assessment of any one or more of the following—
- (a) the likely effect of the abstraction (or abstractions) for which the applicant has applied for a licence (or licences);
  - (b) the likely effect of that abstraction (or those abstractions) taken together with abstractions under any other licence held by the applicant, or abstractions which would be authorised under any other licence for which the applicant has applied;
  - (c) any other prescribed matter.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) If the Agency does so decide, it shall serve a notice of its decision on the applicant; and, subject to subsections (4) to (8) below, shall deal with the application (or applications) accordingly (which, if the Agency made the decision referred to in paragraph (d) of subsection (1) above in relation to any application (or applications), means not publishing any notice under section 37 below, or taking any further step in connection with the application (or applications), until the application for revocation has been received).
- (4) The applicant may by notice appeal to the Secretary of State against the decision, and shall serve a copy of any such notice on the Agency.
- (5) That notice, and the copy of it, shall be served in such manner and within such period as may be prescribed.
- (6) If the Agency serves a notice under subsection (3) above, it shall not publish any notice under section 37 below, or take any further step in connection with the application (or applications), before—
  - (a) the end of the period within which notice of an appeal may be served on the Secretary of State; or
  - (b) if notice of an appeal is so served, the appeal has been determined.
- (7) The Secretary of State—
  - (a) may allow or dismiss the appeal, or vary any part of the decision of the Agency, whether the appeal relates to that part of the decision or not; and
  - (b) shall direct the Agency to deal with the application, or applications, accordingly (which, if the Agency’s decision was made under paragraph (d) of subsection (1) above in relation to any such application, and that decision is upheld, may mean not publishing any notice under section 37 below, or taking any further step in connection with the application, until the application for revocation has been received).
- (8) Subsections (2) and (7) of section 44 below apply in relation to an appeal under this section as they apply in relation to an appeal under section 43 below.
- (9) This section is subject to section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F65** S. 36A inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. **13(1)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(h) (with [Sch. para. 7](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C23** S. 36A excluded (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 2 para. 8\(2\)](#)

### [<sup>F66</sup>37 Publication of application for licence.

- (1) The Agency shall publish a notice of an application for—
  - (a) a full licence or a transfer licence; or
  - (b) a licence under this Chapter to obstruct or impede the flow of any inland waters by means of impounding works,



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

in the prescribed way or (if no way is prescribed) in a way calculated to bring the application to the attention of persons who in the Agency's view are likely to be affected by the licence.

- (2) Not later than the date on which that notice is first published, the Agency shall also serve a copy of it on the persons referred to in subsection (3) below (except the applicant, if the applicant is one of those persons).
- (3) Those persons are—
- (a) any water undertaker within whose area any proposed point of abstraction or impounding is situated;
  - (b) any navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority having functions in relation to any inland waters at any such proposed point; and
  - (c) the drainage board for any internal drainage district within which any such proposed point is situated,
- but paragraphs (b) and (c) above do not apply if the licence applied for is exclusively for the abstraction of water from a source of supply that does not form part of any inland waters.
- (4) A notice for the purposes of the preceding provisions of this section shall—
- (a) be in the prescribed form and shall include any prescribed matters; and
  - (b) state that any person may make representations in writing to the Agency with respect to the application at any time before the end of a period specified in the notice.
- (5) The period referred to in subsection (4)(b) above—
- (a) begins on the date the notice referred to in subsection (1) above is first published as mentioned there; and
  - (b) shall not end before the end of the period of twenty-eight days beginning with that date.
- (6) The Secretary of State may make regulations providing for—
- (a) the requirements of subsection (2) above, or of both subsections (1) and (2) above, not to apply in prescribed cases;
  - (b) notices of applications to exclude prescribed classes of information, either generally or as respects prescribed classes of application.
- (7) In this section, “proposed point of abstraction or impounding”, in relation to an application for a licence referred to in subsection (1) above, means a place where a licence, if granted in accordance with the application, would authorise—
- (a) water to be abstracted; or
  - (b) the flow of inland waters to be obstructed or impeded by means of impounding works,
- (as the case may be).
- (8) This section is subject to section 37A below.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F66** S. 37 substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 14(1)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(i)** (with [Sch. paras. 12](#))



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C24** S. 37(1)(2) excluded (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 3**
- C25** S. 37(1)(2) applied (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 2**
- C26** S. 37(1)(2) excluded (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), 7

### **[<sup>F67</sup>37A Power to dispense with publication requirements**

The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for—

- (a) enabling the Agency; or
- (b) him, in the case of applications referred to him in accordance with section 41 below,

to direct or determine that the requirements of subsections (1) and (2) of section 37 above may in any case (except where the Agency is the applicant) be dispensed with, if in that case it appears to the Agency (or, as the case may be, the Secretary of State) to be appropriate to do so.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F67** S. 37A inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 14(2)**, 105(3); [S.I. 2006/984](#), art. 2(i) (with [Sch. paras. 1, 2](#))

### *Consideration of licence applications*

## **38 General consideration of applications.**

- (1) The [<sup>F68</sup>Agency] shall not determine any application for a licence under this Chapter before the end of the period specified [<sup>F69</sup>in the notice referred to in section 37(4)(b)] above.

[<sup>F70</sup>(1A) An application shall be determined in two stages in accordance with subsections (1B) and (1C) below if it is an application for a full licence or a transfer licence which, if granted—

- (a) would take effect immediately after the expiry of an existing licence of the same type (the “existing licence”) and be held by the same person as the holder of that licence; but
- (b) would in any other respect be different from the existing licence in a way which, if the existing licence were to continue without expiring, would require an application to be made under section 51(2) below for a variation of the licence.

(1B) So far as the application relates to any such difference as is mentioned in subsection (1A)(b) above, it shall first be treated for determination purposes as if it were an application for a variation under section 51(2) below (but as if the existing licence were to continue without expiring).

(1C) If the result of that would have been the grant of the application for variation of the licence, the application referred to in subsection (1) above shall be treated as one for a

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

licence with that variation, and its determination concluded accordingly; and otherwise its determination shall be concluded as if it were an application for a licence with no such variation.]

- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this Chapter, on any application to the [F68 Agency] for a licence under this Chapter, the [F68 Agency]—
- (a) may grant a licence containing such provisions as the [F68 Agency] considers appropriate; or
  - (b) if, having regard to the provisions of this Chapter, the [F68 Agency] considers it necessary or expedient to do so, may refuse to grant a licence.
- (3) Without prejudice to section 39(1) below, the [F68 Agency], in dealing with any application for a licence under this Chapter, shall have regard to [F71 all the relevant circumstances, including any duty imposed by or under any enactment on bodies having functions in relation to inland waters (for example, navigation authorities and internal drainage boards), and shall have regard in particular to]—
- (a) any representations in writing relating to the application which are received by the [F68 Agency] before the end of the period mentioned in subsection (1) above; and
  - (b) the requirements of the applicant, in so far as they appear to the [F68 Agency] to be reasonable requirements.
- [F72 and may have regard to any failure on the part of the applicant to make an application under section 40 of the Water Industry Act 1991 pursuant to a proposal made by the Agency under section 20C above.]
- [F73 (4) Subsection (1) above, and paragraph (a) of subsection (3) above, do not apply if in relation to the application in question the requirements of section 37(1) above do not apply by virtue of section 37(6)(a) above or have been dispensed with by virtue of section 37A above.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F68** Words in s. 38 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F69** Words in s. 38(1) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 14(3)(a)(i)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(i)** (with **Sch. paras. 1, 2**)
- F70** S. 38(1A)-(1C) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 15(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(d)** (with **Sch. 3 paras. 2, 7**)
- F71** Words in s. 38(3) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 15(3)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(d)** (with **Sch. 3 paras. 2, 7**)
- F72** Words in s. 38(3) inserted (1.10.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 31(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/2528, **art. 2(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)
- F73** S. 38(4) added (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 14(3)(a)(ii)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(i)** (with **Sch. paras. 1, 2**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C27** S. 38 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by Water Resources (Abstraction and Impounding) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/641), **reg. 1(2)**, **Sch. 2 para. 8(3)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### 39 **Obligation to have regard to existing rights and privileges.**

- (1) [<sup>F74</sup>Subject to subsection (1A) below,] the [<sup>F75</sup>Agency] shall not, except with the consent of the person entitled to the rights, grant a licence so authorising—
- (a) the abstraction of water; or
  - (b) the flow of any inland waters to be obstructed or impeded by means of impounding works,
- as to derogate from any rights which, at the time when the application is determined by the [<sup>F75</sup>Agency], are protected rights for the purposes of this Chapter.

[<sup>F76</sup>(1A) Subsection (1) above does not apply when—

- (a) the application to be determined is one which does not fall within subsection (1A) of section 38 above only because paragraph (b) of that subsection is not satisfied; or
- (b) the determination of an application is being concluded in accordance with subsection (1C) of that section.]

- (2) In a case where an application for a licence under this Chapter relates to abstraction from underground strata, the [<sup>F75</sup>Agency], in dealing with the application, shall have regard to the requirements of existing lawful uses of water abstracted from those strata, whether for agriculture, industry, water supply or other purposes.

<sup>F77</sup>(3) .....

- (4) Any reference in this Chapter, in relation to the abstraction of water or obstructing or impeding the flow of any inland waters by means of impounding works, to derogating from a right which is a protected right for the purposes of this Chapter is a reference to, as the case may be—

- (a) abstracting water; or
- (b) so obstructing or impeding the flow of any such waters,

in such a way, or to such an extent, as to prevent the person entitled to that right from abstracting water to the extent mentioned in [<sup>F78</sup>(as the case may be) section 39A(2) or (7), 48(1) or 59C(10) below or section 102(3) of the Water Act 2003, or in a provision made in an order by virtue of section 10(5)(b) of that Act, in each case subject to any limitations mentioned there].

- (5) For the purposes of subsection (2) above the [<sup>F75</sup>Agency] shall be entitled (but shall not be bound) to treat as lawful any existing use of water from underground strata unless—

- (a) by a decision given in any legal proceedings, it has been held to be unlawful; and
- (b) that decision has not been quashed or reversed.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F74** Words in s. 39(1) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 16(2), 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(e) (with Sch. 3 para. 7)

**F75** Words in s. 39 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

**F76** S. 39(1A) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 16(3), 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(e) (with Sch. 3 para. 7)

**F77** S. 39(3) repealed (1.4.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 16(4), 105(3), Sch. 9 Pt. 1; S.I. 2005/968, art. 2(c)(n)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F78** Words in s. 39(4) substituted (1.4.2005) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 16(5)**, 105(3); S.I. 2005/968, art. 2(c)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C28** S. 39 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 8(4)**

**[<sup>F79</sup>39A Protected rights for the purposes of this Chapter**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a right is a protected right if—
  - (a) it is such a right as a person who is the holder of a full licence is taken to have by virtue of section 48(1) below;
  - (b) it is such a right as a person is taken to have by virtue of subsection (2) below;
  - (c) it is such a right as a person continues to be taken to have by virtue of subsection (7) below;
  - (d) it is such a right as a person is taken to have by virtue of subsection (10) of section 59C below;
  - (e) it is such a right as a person continues to be taken to have by virtue of a provision made under subsection (5)(b) of section 10 of the Water Act 2003 in an order made under that section; or
  - (f) it is such a right as a person continues to be taken to have by virtue of section 102(3) of that Act.
- (2) A person who is in a position to carry out an abstraction of a quantity of water which—
  - (a) by virtue of section 27(1) above is not subject to the restriction on abstraction; and
  - (b) also falls within subsection (4) or (5) below,
 shall be taken, for the purposes of this Chapter, to have a right to do so in respect of the maximum quantity mentioned in subsection (3) below.
- (3) The maximum quantity is the lower of the following—
  - (a) twenty cubic metres;
  - (b) if, by virtue of an order under section 27A(1) above, section 27(1) above has, or has ever had, effect in relation to the source of supply and point of abstraction in question as if it referred to a quantity lower than twenty cubic metres, that lower quantity (or, if more than one, the lowest of them).
- (4) An abstraction falls within this subsection if it is an abstraction from inland waters carried out by or on behalf of an occupier of land contiguous to those waters at the place where the abstraction is effected (“contiguous land”), and—
  - (a) the water is abstracted for use on a holding consisting of the contiguous land with or without other land held with that land; and
  - (b) it is abstracted for use on that holding for either or both of the following purposes—
    - (i) the domestic purposes of the occupier’s household;
    - (ii) agricultural purposes other than spray irrigation.
- (5) An abstraction falls within this subsection if it is an abstraction from underground strata and the water is abstracted by or on behalf of an individual as a supply of water for the domestic purposes of his household.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Subsection (2) above shall not apply to a person in respect of an abstraction which that person is, or was at any time, taken to have a right to carry out by virtue of any provision mentioned in paragraph (a), (c), (d), (e) or (f) of subsection (1) above.
- (7) Subject to subsection (8) below, a person who was the holder of a full licence which has ceased to have effect (or has ceased in part to have effect) by virtue of—
- (a) any provision made by virtue of section 27A(5) above in an order made under section 27A(1) above; or
  - (b) any provision made by virtue of section 33A(5) above in regulations made under section 33A above,
- and who was taken in consequence of that licence (or that part of the licence) to have a right to abstract water by virtue of section 48(1) below shall continue to be taken to have that right for the purposes of this Chapter.
- (8) For the purposes of this Chapter, the person who was the holder of the licence in question (“the old licence”) shall cease to continue to be taken to have a right, by virtue of subsection (7) above, to abstract water if—
- (a) during a period mentioned in subsection (9) below he does not carry out any such abstraction as would have been authorised by the old licence if it had still been in force; or
  - (b) following a further order under section 27A(1) above or further regulations under section 33A above, he is granted another full licence in respect of abstraction from the same point as that authorised by the old licence.
- (9) The period referred to in subsection (8)(a) above is—
- (a) four years; or
  - (b) if the abstractions authorised under the old licence were abstractions planned to be carried out at intervals of more than four years, or abstractions for emergency purposes only, such longer period as the Agency may determine on the application of the holder of the old licence.
- (10) In subsections (8) and (9) above, references to the old licence, in the case of a licence which ceased to have effect only to the extent specified in the order or regulations referred to in subsection (7) above, are to the part of the licence which ceased to have effect.
- (11) Any reference in this Chapter to the person entitled to a protected right shall be construed in accordance with this section.
- (12) This section is subject to any provision made by virtue of subsection (3) of section 39B below, and to subsections (4) and (5) of that section.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F79** S. 39A inserted (1.4.2005) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 17(1), 105(3); S.I. 2005/968, art. 2(d) (with Sch. 1 para. 2)

#### [<sup>F80</sup>39B Register of certain protected rights

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for and in connection with the establishment, and for the keeping and maintenance by the Agency, of one or more

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

registers of protected rights which arise otherwise than by virtue of a licence under this Chapter to abstract water.

- (2) The regulations may, in particular, provide for—
- (a) a register to relate to a prescribed geographical area, or for different sections of a register to relate to different geographical areas (whether prescribed or not);
  - (b) the inclusion of protected rights which arise other than by virtue of any provision of this Act;
  - (c) the form and contents of the register, and its inspection by members of the public;
  - (d) the procedure for applying for a protected right to be included in the register, including any information which is to accompany the application;
  - (e) cases in which it is the duty of the Agency to include a protected right in the register without an application for inclusion having been made.
- (3) The Secretary of State may by order designate any geographical area in respect of which a register, or a section of a register, relates as an area of compulsory registration.
- (4) If he does so, a protected right in that area which is not registered shall not have effect as a protected right for any purpose of this Act (other than that of registering it) for so long as it is not registered.
- (5) Subsection (4) above does not apply in relation to any protected right until after the expiry of the period of two years beginning with the date on which the order under subsection (3) above was made, or such longer period as may be specified in the order.
- (6) An order under subsection (3) above may be made only on the application of the Agency; but the Secretary of State may direct the Agency to make such an application.
- (7) Schedule 6 to this Act shall have effect with respect to applications for orders under subsection (3) above and with respect to the making of such orders.
- (8) The power to make orders under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument; and a statutory instrument containing an order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (9) Paragraphs (d) to (f) of section 219(2) below apply in relation to orders under this section as they apply to regulations made under this Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F80** S. 39B inserted (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 18, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(f) (with Sch. 3 paras. 3, 7)

#### 40 Obligation to take river flow etc. into account.

- (1) Without prejudice to sections 38(3) and 39(1) above, subsection (2) or, as the case may be, subsection (3) below shall apply where any application for a licence under this Chapter relates to abstraction from any inland waters or to obstructing or impeding the flow of any inland waters by means of impounding works.
- (2) If, in the case of such an application as is mentioned in subsection (1) above, the application is made at a time when no minimum acceptable flow for the inland waters in question has been determined under Chapter I of this Part, the [<sup>F81</sup>Agency], in



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

dealing with the application, shall have regard to the considerations by reference to which, in accordance with section 21(4) and (5) above, a minimum acceptable flow for those waters would fall to be determined.

- (3) If, in the case of such an application as is mentioned in subsection (1) above, the application is made at a time after a minimum acceptable flow for the waters in question has been determined under Chapter I of this Part, the [<sup>F81</sup>Agency], in dealing with the application, shall have regard to the need to secure or, as the case may be, secure in relation to the different times or periods for which the flow is determined—
- (a) that the flow at any control point will not be reduced below the minimum acceptable flow at that point; or
  - (b) if it is already less than that minimum acceptable flow, that the flow at any control point will not be further reduced below the minimum acceptable flow at that point.
- (4) Without prejudice to sections 38(3) and 39(1) above, where—
- (a) an application for a licence under this Chapter relates to abstraction from underground strata; and
  - (b) it appears to the [<sup>F81</sup>Agency] that the proposed abstraction is likely to affect the flow, level or volume of any inland waters which are neither discrete waters nor waters comprised in an order under section 33 above,
- subsection (2) or, as the case may be, subsection (3) above shall apply as if the application related to abstraction from those waters.

#### Textual Amendments

**F81** Words in s. 40 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C29** S. 40(1) applied (1.4.2006) by Water Resources (Abstraction and Impounding) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/641), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 2 para. 8(5)**

### *Call-in of applications*

#### **41 Secretary of State's power to call in applications**

- (1) The Secretary of State may give directions to the [<sup>F82</sup>Agency] requiring applications for licences under this Chapter to be referred to him, instead of being dealt with by the [<sup>F82</sup>Agency].
- (2) A direction under this section—
- (a) may relate either to a particular application or to applications of a class specified in the direction; and
  - (b) may except from the operation of the direction such classes of applications as may be specified in the direction in such circumstances as may be so specified.
- [<sup>F83</sup>(3) An application may not be referred to the Secretary of State under this section—
- (a) if in relation to the application the Agency is still considering whether to make any such decision as is referred to in subsection (1) of section 36A above, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

if it has made such a decision but has not yet served the notice referred to in subsection (3) of that section; or

- (b) where the Agency has served a notice on the applicant under subsection (3) of that section, until the period for appealing under that section has expired or (if the applicant appeals) the appeal has been determined.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F82** Words in s. 41 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F83** S. 41(3) added (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 13(2), 105(3)**; S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(h)** (with **Sch. para. 7**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C30** S. 41 applied (1.4.2006) by Water Resources (Abstraction and Impounding) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/641), **reg. 1(2), Sch. 2 para. 8(5)**

## 42 Consideration of called-in applications.

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section and to section 46 below, the Secretary of State, on considering a called-in application—
- (a) may determine that a licence shall be granted containing such provisions as he considers appropriate; or
  - (b) if, having regard to the provisions of this Act, he considers it necessary or expedient to do so, may determine that no licence shall be granted.
- (2) Before determining a called-in application, the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit—
- (a) cause a local inquiry to be held; or
  - (b) afford to the applicant and the [<sup>F84</sup>Agency] an opportunity of appearing before, and being heard by, a person appointed by the Secretary of State for the purpose;
- and the Secretary of State shall act as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above if a request is made by the applicant or the [<sup>F84</sup>Agency] to be heard with respect to the application.
- (3) The provisions of sections 37, 38(1) and (3), 39(2) and 40 above shall apply in relation to any called-in application as if—
- (a) any reference in those provisions to the [<sup>F84</sup>Agency], except the references in sections [<sup>F85</sup>37 ] and 38(3)(a), were a reference to the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) any reference to section 39(1) above were a reference to subsection (4) below.
- (4) [<sup>F86</sup>Subject to subsection (4A) below,] in determining any called-in application and, in particular, in determining what (if any) direction to give under subsection (5) below, the Secretary of State shall consider whether any such direction would require the grant of a licence which would so authorise—
- (a) the abstraction of water; or
  - (b) the flow of any inland waters to be obstructed or impeded by means of impounding works,

as to derogate from rights which, at the time when the direction in question is given, are protected rights for the purposes of this Chapter.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F87</sup>(4A) Subsection (1A) of section 39 above applies in relation to subsection (4) above as it applies in relation to section 39(1) above.]

- (5) Where the decision of the Secretary of State on a called-in application is that a licence is to be granted, the decision shall include a direction to the [<sup>F84</sup>Agency] to grant a licence containing such provisions as may be specified in the direction.
- (6) The decision of the Secretary of State on any called-in application shall be final.
- (7) In this section “called-in application” means an application referred to the Secretary of State in accordance with directions under section 41 above.

#### Textual Amendments

- F84** Words in s. 42 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F85** Word in s. 42(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 14(3)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(i)** (with **Sch. paras. 1, 2**)
- F86** Words in s. 42(4) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 16(6)(a)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(e)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)
- F87** S. 42(4A) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 16(6)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(e)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C31** S. 42 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by Water Resources (Abstraction and Impounding) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/641), **reg. 1(2)**, **Sch. 2 para. 7**

### *Appeals with respect to decisions on licence applications*

#### **43 Appeals to the Secretary of State.**

- (1) Where an application has been made to the [<sup>F88</sup>Agency] for a licence under this Chapter, the applicant may by notice appeal to the Secretary of State if—
  - (a) the applicant is dissatisfied with the decision of the [<sup>F88</sup>Agency] on the application; or
  - (b) the [<sup>F88</sup>Agency] fails within the period specified in subsection (2) below to give to the applicant either—
    - (i) notice of the [<sup>F88</sup>Agency’s] decision on the application; or
    - (ii) notice that the application has been referred to the Secretary of State in accordance with any direction under section 41 above.

[<sup>F89</sup>(1A) This section is subject to section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals etc).]

- (2) The period mentioned in subsection (1)(b) above is—
  - (a) except in a case falling within paragraph (b) below, such period as may be prescribed; and
  - (b) where an extended period is at any time agreed in writing between the applicant and the [<sup>F88</sup>Agency], the extended period.
- (3) A notice of appeal under this section shall be served—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in such manner as may be prescribed; and
- (b) within such period as may be prescribed, being a period of not less than twenty-eight days from, as the case may be—
  - (i) the date on which the decision to which it relates was notified to the applicant; or
  - (ii) the end of the period which, by virtue of subsection (2) above, is applicable for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above.
- (4) Where a notice is served under this section in respect of any application, the applicant shall, within the period prescribed for the purposes of subsection (3)(b) above, serve a copy of the notice on the [<sup>F88</sup>Agency].
- (5) Where any representations in writing with respect to an application were made within the period specified [<sup>F90</sup>in any such notice as is referred to in section 37(4)(b)] above, the Secretary of State shall, before determining an appeal under this section in respect of the application, require the [<sup>F88</sup>Agency] to serve a copy of the notice of appeal on each of the persons who made those representations.

#### Textual Amendments

- F88** Words in s. 43 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F89** S. 43(1A) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 134** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F90** Words in s. 43(5) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 14(3)(c)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(i)** (with **Sch. paras. 1, 2**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C32** S. 43: power to delegate functions conferred (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, **s. 114(2)(v)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- C33** S. 43(1)(a) modified (1.4.2005) by The Water Act 2003 (Commencement No. 4, Transitional Provisions and Savings) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/968), **art. 4(1)(3)**, **Sch. 1 para. 5(5)**

## 44 Determination of appeals.

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this Chapter, where an appeal is brought under section 43 above, the Secretary of State—
  - (a) may allow or dismiss the appeal or reverse or vary any part of the decision of the [<sup>F91</sup>Agency], whether the appeal relates to that part of the decision or not; and
  - (b) may deal with the application as if it had been made to him in the first instance; and for the purposes of this section an appeal by virtue of section 43(1)(b) above shall be taken to be an appeal against a refusal of the application.
- (2) Before determining an appeal under section 43 above, the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit—
  - (a) cause a local inquiry to be held; or
  - (b) afford to the applicant and the [<sup>F91</sup>Agency] an opportunity of appearing before, and being heard by, a person appointed by the Secretary of State for the purpose;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and the Secretary of State shall act as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above if a request is made by the applicant or the [F91Agency] to be heard with respect to the appeal.

(3) The Secretary of State, in determining an appeal under section 43 above, shall take into account—

- (a) any further representations in writing received by him, within the prescribed period, from the persons mentioned in section 43(5) above; and
- (b) the requirements of the applicant, in so far as they appear to the Secretary of State to be reasonable requirements.

(4) [F92Subject to subsection (4A) below,] in determining any appeal under section 43 above and, in particular, in determining what (if any) direction to give under subsection (6) below, the Secretary of State shall consider whether any such direction would require such a grant or variation of a licence as would so authorise—

- (a) the abstraction of water; or
- (b) the flow of any inland waters to be obstructed or impeded by means of impounding works,

as to derogate from rights which, at the time when the direction in question is given, are protected rights for the purposes of this Chapter.

[F93(4A) Subsection (1A) of section 39 above applies in relation to subsection (4) above as it applies in relation to section 39(1) above.]

(5) The provisions of sections 39(2) and 40 above shall apply in relation to any appeal under section 43 above as if—

- (a) any reference in those provisions to the [F91Agency], were a reference to the Secretary of State; and
- (b) the references to sections 38(3) and 39(1) above were references to subsections (3) and (4) above.

(6) Where the decision on an appeal under section 43 above is that a licence is to be granted or to be varied or revoked, the decision shall include a direction to the [F91Agency], as the case may be—

- (a) to grant a licence containing such provisions as may be specified in the direction;
- (b) to vary the licence so as to contain such provisions as may be so specified; or
- (c) to revoke the licence.

(7) The decision of the Secretary of State on any appeal under section 43 above shall be final.

#### Textual Amendments

**F91** Words in s. 44 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F92** Words in s. 44(4) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 16(7)(a)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(e)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)

**F93** S. 44(4A) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 16(7)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(e)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### 45 Regulations with respect to appeals.

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the manner in which appeals against decisions [<sup>F94</sup>of the Agency under section 36A above or ] on applications for the grant, revocation or variation of licences under this Chapter are to be dealt with, including provision requiring the giving of notices of, and information relating to, the making of such appeals or decisions on any such appeals.
  - (2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) above, provision shall be made by regulations under this section for securing that, in prescribed circumstances (being circumstances in which it appears to the Secretary of State that applications for licences under this Chapter would be of special concern to National Park <sup>F95</sup> . . . authorities)—
    - (a) notice of any appeal against the decision on such an application, will be served on any National Park <sup>F95</sup> . . . authority who made representations falling within paragraph (b) of section 34(3) above; and
    - (b) the Secretary of State, in determining the appeal, will take account of any further representations made by such an authority within such period and in such manner as may be prescribed.
- [<sup>F96</sup>(2A) Subsection (2) above does not apply in relation to appeals against decisions of the Agency under section 36A above.]
- (3) Subsections (4) <sup>F95</sup> . . . of section 34 above shall apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of that section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F94** Words in s. 45(1) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 13(3)(a)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, [art. 2\(h\)](#) (with [Sch. para. 7](#))
- F95** Words in s. 45 repealed (1.4.1997) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120(3), **Sch. 24** (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2560, [art. 2](#), **Sch.**
- F96** S. 45(2A) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 13(3)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, [art. 2\(h\)](#) (with [Sch. para. 7](#))

#### *Form, contents and effect of licences*

#### 46 Form and contents of licences.

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the form of licences under this Chapter or of any class of such licences; but any regulations under this subsection shall have effect subject to the following provisions of this section and to any other express provision contained in, or having effect by virtue of, any other enactment contained in this Chapter.
- (2) [<sup>F97</sup>Every full licence under this Chapter shall, and any other licence under this Chapter to abstract water may, make— ]
  - (a) provision as to the quantity of water authorised to be abstracted in pursuance of the licence from the source of supply to which the licence relates during a period or periods specified in the licence, including provision as to the way in which that quantity is to be measured or assessed for the purposes of this Chapter; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) provision for determining, by measurement or assessment, what quantity of water is to be taken to have been abstracted during any such period by the holder of the licence from the source of supply to which the licence relates.

[<sup>F98</sup>(2A) For the purposes of section 61(4A) below—

- (a) every full licence under this Chapter which is for a term exceeding twelve years shall; and
- (b) any transfer licence under this Chapter which is for a term exceeding twelve years may,

specify a minimum value for the quantity referred to in subsection (2)(a) above.]

- (3) Every licence under this Chapter to abstract water shall indicate the means by which water is authorised to be abstracted in pursuance of the licence, by reference either to specified works, machinery or apparatus or to works, machinery or apparatus fulfilling specified requirements.

[<sup>F99</sup>(4) Every licence under this Chapter to abstract water shall also specify the purposes for which water abstracted in pursuance of the licence is to be used.

- (5) Every licence under this Chapter to abstract water shall state—

- (a) the date on which it takes effect; and
- (b) the date on which it expires.

(5A) Every licence under this Chapter to obstruct or impede any inland waters shall remain in force until revoked.]

- (6) Different provision may be made by the same licence with respect to any one or more of the following matters, that is to say—

- (a) the abstraction of water during different periods;
- (b) the abstraction of water from the same source of supply but at different points or by different means;
- (c) the abstraction of water for use for different purposes;

and any such provision as is mentioned in subsection (2) above may be made separately in relation to each of the matters for which (in accordance with this subsection) different provision is made in the licence.

- (7) Nothing in subsection (6) above shall be construed as preventing two or more licences from being granted to the same person to be held concurrently in respect of the same source of supply, if the licences authorise the abstraction of water at different points [<sup>F100</sup>, by different means or for different purposes ] .

#### Textual Amendments

**F97** Words in s. 46(2) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 19(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(j) (with [Sch. para. 1](#))

**F98** S. 46(2A) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 19(3)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(j) (with [Sch. para. 1](#))

**F99** S. 46(4)(5)(5A) substituted for s. 46(4)(5) (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 19(4)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(g) (with [Sch. 3 para. 7](#))

**F100** Words in s. 46(7) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 19(5)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(j) (with [Sch. para. 1](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F101</sup>46A Limited extension of abstraction licence validity

- (1) If the condition in subsection (2) below is met, a full licence or a transfer licence whose term exceeded twelve months but whose expiry date (“the expiry date”) has passed shall be treated for all the purposes of this Act as not expiring until the date mentioned in subsection (4) below.
- (2) The condition is that the Agency receives, not later than the beginning of the period of three months ending on the expiry date (or such later date before the expiry date as the Agency agrees), a valid application for a new licence—
  - (a) for abstraction from the same point as the abstraction licensed by the expiring licence;
  - (b) whose holder would be the same as the holder of the expiring licence; and
  - (c) which would take effect immediately after the expiry date.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above, a “valid” application is one which complies with all the requirements of this Act in relation to the making of applications for licences of the type in question.
- (4) The date referred to in subsection (1) above is whichever is the later of—
  - (a) if a new licence is granted (whether or not on the terms applied for), the date on which it takes effect;
  - (b) otherwise—
    - (i) except where the Secretary of State calls in an application under section 41 above, the expiry of the period for appealing under section 43 above, or if an appeal is brought, the date of its withdrawal; or
    - (ii) where the Secretary of State decides (under section 42 or 44 above) that no licence is to be granted, the date on which that decision is notified to the applicant.]

### Textual Amendments

**F101** S. 46A inserted (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 20, 105(3)**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(g) (with Sch. 3 paras. 2, 7)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C34** S. 46A applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), 17

## 47 Holders of licence.

- (1) Every licence under this Chapter <sup>F102</sup>... shall specify the person to whom the licence is granted.
- [<sup>F103</sup>(2) The person to whom a licence under this Chapter is granted to abstract water or to obstruct or impede any inland waters is the holder of the licence for the purposes of this Act, subject to sections 59A to 59C and 67 below.]
- <sup>F104</sup>(3) .....



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F102** Words in s. 47(1) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 19(6), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(j) (with [Sch. para. 1](#))
- F103** S. 47(2) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 23(2)(a), 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(m) (with [Sch. para. 3](#))
- F104** S. 47(3) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 23(2)(b), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(m) (with [Sch. para. 3](#))

#### 48 General effect of licence.

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter a person who is for the time being the holder of a licence under this Chapter to abstract water shall be taken to have a right to abstract water to the extent authorised by the licence and in accordance with the provisions contained in it.
- (2) In any action brought against a person in respect of the abstraction of water from a source of supply [<sup>F105</sup>(other than an abstraction in respect of which a claim could be brought under section 48A below, in which case that section shall apply)], it shall be a defence, subject to paragraph 2 of Schedule 7 to this Act, for him to prove—
  - (a) that the water was abstracted in pursuance of a licence under this Chapter; and
  - (b) that the provisions of the licence were complied with.
- (3) In any action brought against a person in respect of any obstruction or impeding of the flow of any inland waters at any point by means of impounding works, it shall be a defence for him to prove—
  - (a) that the flow was so obstructed or impeded in pursuance of a licence under this Chapter;
  - (b) that the obstructing or impeding was in the manner specified in that licence and to an extent not exceeding the extent so specified; and
  - (c) that the other requirements of the licence (if any) were complied with.
- (4) Nothing in subsection (2) or (3) above shall exonerate a person from any action for negligence or breach of contract.

#### Textual Amendments

- F105** Words in s. 48(2) inserted (1.4.2005) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), ss. 24(2), 105(3) (with s. 24(3)(b)); S.I. 2004/641, art. 5 (with [Sch. 3 paras. 4, 7](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C35** S. 48(1) modified (1.4.2005) by [The Water Act 2003 \(Commencement No. 4, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/968\)](#), art. 4(1)(3), [Sch. 1 paras. 7\(10\), 8\(3\)](#)

#### [<sup>F106</sup>48A Civil remedies for loss or damage due to water abstraction

- (1) Subject to subsection (7) below and to section 79 (including that section as applied by section 79A(9)) below, a person who abstracts water from any inland waters or underground strata (an “abstractor”) shall not by that abstraction cause loss or damage to another person.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A person who suffers such loss or damage (a “relevant person”) may bring a claim against the abstractor.
- (3) Such a claim shall be treated as one in tort for breach of statutory duty.
- (4) In proceedings in respect of a claim under this section, the court may not grant an injunction against the abstractor if that would risk interrupting the supply of water to the public, or would put public health or safety at risk.
- (5) Except as provided in this section, no claim may be made in civil proceedings by a person (whether or not a relevant person) against an abstractor in respect of loss or damage caused by his abstraction of water.
- (6) Nothing in this section prevents or affects a claim for negligence or breach of contract.
- (7) This section does not apply, and no claim may be brought under this section, where the loss or damage is caused by an abstractor acting in pursuance of a licence under this Chapter and is loss or damage—
  - (a) in respect of which a person is entitled to bring a claim under section 60 below (or would be so entitled if there were a breach of the duty referred to in that section);
  - (b) in respect of which a person would have been entitled to bring a claim under section 60 below but for an express provision (including, for example, section 39(1A) above and section 59C(6) below) disapplying that duty; or
  - (c) constituting grounds on which a person is entitled to apply to the Secretary of State under section 55 below (or would be so entitled but for subsection (2) of that section) for the revocation or variation of that licence,
 but without prejudice to the application of section 48 above.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F106** S. 48A inserted (1.4.2005) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 24(1)**, 105(3) (with s. 24(3)(a)); S.I. 2004/641, art. 5 (with Sch. 3 paras. 4, 7)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C36** S. 48A(1) excluded (22.7.2008) by [Crossrail Act 2008 \(c. 18\)](#), **s. 46(1)**

**C37** S. 48A(5) excluded (22.7.2008) by [Crossrail Act 2008 \(c. 18\)](#), **s. 46(4)**

### *Succession to licences*

#### **<sup>F107</sup>49 Succession to licences to abstract where person ceases to occupy the relevant land.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F107** S. 49 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 23(4)(5)**, 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 1**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(m)(s)(ii) (with Sch. para. 3)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F108 50 Succession where person becomes occupier of part of the relevant land.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F108** S. 50 repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), s. 23(4)(5), 105(3), [Sch. 9 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(m)(s)(ii) (with [Sch. para. 3](#))

*Modification of licences*

**51 Modification on application of licence holder.**

(1) The holder of a licence under this Chapter [<sup>F109</sup>to abstract water] may apply to the [<sup>F110</sup>Agency] to revoke the licence and, on any such application, the [<sup>F110</sup>Agency] shall revoke the licence accordingly.

[<sup>F111</sup>(1A) The holder of a licence under this Chapter to obstruct or impede the flow of inland waters (an “impounding licence”) may apply to the Agency to revoke the licence and, on any such application, the Agency may revoke the licence accordingly.

(1B) The Agency may require conditions to be met to its satisfaction before revocation of the impounding licence takes effect, and those conditions may in particular include conditions—

- (a) requiring the removal of all or part of the impounding works;
- (b) as to the restoration of the site of the impounding works to a state which is satisfactory to the Agency;
- (c) relating to the inland waters the flow of which is obstructed or impeded by means of the impounding works.

(1C) The person making an application under subsection (1A) above (“the applicant”) may by notice appeal to the Secretary of State if—

- (a) he is dissatisfied with the decision of the Agency as to—
  - (i) whether his licence may be revoked; or
  - (ii) any conditions imposed by virtue of subsection (1B) above; or
- (b) the Agency fails to give notice of its decision to the applicant within the prescribed period or within such extended period as may be agreed in writing between the Agency and the applicant.

(1D) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision with respect to—

- (a) the manner in which notices of appeal under subsection (1C) above shall be served;
- (b) the period within which such notices shall be served;
- (c) the procedure on any such appeal.

(1E) Where an appeal is brought under subsection (1C) above, the Secretary of State may—

- (a) allow or dismiss the appeal or reverse or vary any part of the decision of the Agency, whether the appeal relates to that part of the decision or not; and
- (b) may deal with the application as if it had been made to him in the first place.

(1F) The decision of the Secretary of State on any appeal under subsection (1C) above shall be final.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (1G) Subsections (1C) to (1F) above are subject to section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals).]
- (2) The holder of a licence under this Chapter may apply to the [F110Agency] to vary the licence.
- [F112(2A) An application may not be made under subsection (2) above to convert an abstraction licence of one type into an abstraction licence of a different type.]
- (3) Subject to subsection (4) below, the provisions of sections 37 to 44 above shall apply (with the necessary modifications) to applications under subsection (2) above, and to the variation of licences in pursuance of such applications, as they apply to applications for, and the grant of, licences under this Chapter.
- (4) Where the variation proposed in an application under subsection (2) above is limited to reducing the quantity of water authorised to be abstracted in pursuance of the licence during one or more periods—
- (a) sections 37 and 38(1) above shall not apply by virtue of subsection (3) above; and
  - (b) sections 43 and 44 above, as applied by that subsection, shall have effect as if subsection (5) of section 43 and paragraph (a) of section 44(3) were omitted.

#### Textual Amendments

- F109** Words in s. 51(1) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 21(2), 105(3)** (with s. 21(5)); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(k)
- F110** Words in s. 51 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F111** S. 51(1A)-(1G) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 21(3), 105(3)** (with s. 21(5)); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(k)
- F112** S. 51(2A) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 4**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(s)(i)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C38** S. 51 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), **18**

## 52 Proposals for modification at instance of the [F113Agency] or Secretary of State.

- (1) Where it appears to the [F113Agency] that a licence under this Chapter should be revoked or varied, the [F113Agency] may formulate proposals for revoking or varying the licence.
- [F114(1A) In the case of a licence to obstruct or impede any inland waters, a variation may take the form of a requirement that the impounding works be modified in ways specified in the proposed new provision of the licence.]
- (2) Where—
- (a) it appears to the Secretary of State (either in consequence of representations made to the Secretary of State or otherwise) that a licence under this Chapter ought to be reviewed; but

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) no proposals for revoking or varying the licence have been formulated by the [F113 Agency] under subsection (1) above,  
the Secretary of State may, as he may consider appropriate in the circumstances, give the [F113 Agency] a direction under subsection (3) below.
- (3) A direction under this subsection may—
- (a) direct the [F113 Agency] to formulate proposals for revoking the licence in question; or
  - (b) direct the [F113 Agency] to formulate proposals for varying that licence in such manner as may be specified in the direction.
- (4) Notice in the prescribed form of any proposals formulated under this section with respect to any licence shall—
- (a) be served on the holder of the licence; and
  - [F115](b) be published in the prescribed way or (if no way is prescribed) in a way calculated to bring it to the attention of persons likely to be affected if the licence were revoked or varied as proposed.]
- (5) If—
- (a) a licence with respect to which any proposals are formulated under this section relates to any inland waters; and
  - (b) the proposals provide for variation of that licence,
- a copy of the notice for the purposes of subsection (4) above shall, not later than the date on which it is first published [F116 as mentioned in subsection (4)(b) above], be served on any navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority having functions in relation to those waters at a place where the licence, if varied in accordance with the proposals, would authorise water to be abstracted or impounded.
- [F117](6) A notice for the purposes of subsection (4) above shall—
- (a) include any prescribed matters; and
  - (b) state that, before the end of a period specified in the notice—
    - (i) the holder of the licence may give notice in writing to the Agency objecting to the proposals; and
    - (ii) any other person may make representations in writing to the Agency with respect to the proposals.]
- [F118](7) The period referred to in subsection (6)(b) above—
- (a) begins on the date the notice referred to in subsection (4) above is first published as mentioned there; and
  - (b) shall not end before the end of the period of twenty-eight days beginning with that date.]
- [F119](8) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F113** Words in s. 52 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F114** S. 52(1A) inserted (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, **ss. 22(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(1)
- F115** S. 52(4)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, **ss. 22(3)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(1)
- F116** Words in s. 52(5) substituted (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, **ss. 22(4)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(1)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F117** S. 52(6) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 22\(5\), 105\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(1)
- F118** S. 52(7) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 22\(6\), 105\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(1)
- F119** S. 52(8) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 22\(7\), 105\(3\), Sch. 9 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(1)(s)(ii)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C39** S. 52 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\), regs. 1\(2\), 19\(1\)](#)

**53 Modification in pursuance of proposals under section 52.**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, where the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] has formulated any proposals under section 52 above with respect to any licence under this Chapter, it may—
- (a) if the proposals are for the revocation of the licence, revoke the licence; and
  - (b) if the proposals are proposals for varying the licence, vary the licence in accordance with those proposals or, with the consent of the holder of the licence, in any other way.
- (2) The [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] shall not proceed with any proposals formulated under section 52 above before the end of the period specified, in accordance with subsection (7) of that section, for the purposes in relation to those proposals of subsection (6) of that section.
- (3) If no notice under subsection (4) below is given to the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] before the end of the period mentioned in subsection (2) above, the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] may proceed with the proposals.
- (4) If the holder of the licence gives notice to the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] objecting to the proposals before the end of the period mentioned in subsection (2) above, the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] shall refer the proposals to the Secretary of State, with a copy of the notice of objection.
- (5) Where the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] proceeds with any proposals under subsection (3) above and the proposals are proposals for varying the licence, the provisions of sections 38(3), 39(1) and (2) and 40 above shall apply (with the necessary modifications) to any action of the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] in proceeding with the proposals as they apply to the action of the [<sup>F120</sup>Agency] in dealing with an application for a licence.

**Textual Amendments**

- F120** Words in s. 53 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C40** S. 53 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\), regs. 1\(2\), 19\(2\)](#)

**54 Reference of modification proposals to the Secretary of State.**

- (1) Where any proposals of the [<sup>F121</sup>Agency] with respect to a licence are referred to the Secretary of State in accordance with subsection (4) of section 53 above, the Secretary of State shall consider—
- (a) the proposals;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the objection of the holder of the licence; and
- (c) any representations in writing relating to the proposals which were received by the [F121 Agency] before the end of the period mentioned in subsection (2) of that section,

and, subject to subsection (2) below, shall determine (according to whether the proposals are for the revocation or variation of the licence) the question whether the licence should be revoked or the question whether it should be varied as mentioned in subsection (1)(b) of that section.

- (2) Before determining under this section whether a licence should be revoked or varied in a case in which proposals have been formulated under section 52 above, the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit—

- (a) cause a local inquiry to be held; or
- (b) afford to the holder of the licence and the [F121 Agency] an opportunity of appearing before, and being heard by, a person appointed by the Secretary of State for the purpose;

and the Secretary of State shall act as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above if a request is made by the holder of the licence or the [F121 Agency] to be heard with respect to the proposals.

- (3) In determining under this section whether a licence should be varied and, if so, what directions should be given under subsection (5) below, the Secretary of State shall consider whether any such direction would require such a variation of the licence as would so authorise—

- (a) the abstraction of water; or
- (b) the flow of any inland waters to be obstructed or impeded by means of impounding works,

as to derogate from rights which, at the time when the direction is given, are protected rights for the purposes of this Chapter.

- (4) The provisions of sections 39(2) and 40 above shall apply in relation to any proposals referred to the Secretary of State in accordance with section 53(4) above as if in those provisions—

- (a) any reference to the [F121 Agency] were a reference to the Secretary of State;
- (b) any reference to the application were a reference to the proposals; and
- (c) the references to sections 38(3) and 39(1) were references to subsections (1) and (3) above.

- (5) Where the decision of the Secretary of State on a reference in accordance with section 53(4) above is that the licence in question should be revoked or varied, the decision shall include a direction to the [F121 Agency] to revoke the licence or, as the case may be, to vary it so as to contain such provisions as may be specified in the direction.

- (6) A decision of the Secretary of State under this section with respect to any proposals shall be final.

#### Textual Amendments

**F121** Words in s. 54 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C41** S. 54 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), **19(3)**

**55 Application for modification of licence by owner of fishing rights.**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section and to Schedule 7 to this Act, where a licence under this Chapter authorises abstraction from any inland waters in respect of which no minimum acceptable flow has been determined under Chapter I of this Part, any person who is the owner of fishing rights in respect of those inland waters may apply to the Secretary of State for the revocation or variation of the licence.
- (2) No application shall be made under this section in respect of any licence except at a time after the end of the period of one year beginning with the date on which the licence was granted but before a minimum acceptable flow has been determined in relation to the waters in question.
- (3) Any application under this section made by a person as owner of fishing rights in respect of any inland waters shall be made on the grounds that, in his capacity as owner of those rights, he has sustained loss or damage which is directly attributable to the abstraction of water in pursuance of the licence in question and either—
  - (a) he is not entitled to a protected right for the purposes of this Chapter in respect of those inland waters; or
  - (b) the loss or damage which he has sustained in his capacity as owner of those rights is not attributable to any such breach of statutory duty as is mentioned in subsection (2) or (3) of section 60 below or is in addition to any loss or damage attributable to any such breach.
- (4) Where an application is made under this section in respect of any licence, the applicant shall serve notice in the prescribed form on the [<sup>F122</sup>Agency] and on the holder of the licence, stating that each of them is entitled, at any time before the end of the period of twenty-eight days beginning with the date of service of the notice, to make representations in writing to the Secretary of State with respect to the application.
- (5) In this section and section 56 below “fishing rights”, in relation to any inland waters, means any right (whether it is an exclusive right or a right in common with one or more other persons) to fish in those waters, where the right in question—
  - (a) constitutes or is included in an interest in land; or
  - (b) is exercisable by virtue of an exclusive licence granted for valuable consideration;
 and any reference to an owner of fishing rights is a reference to the person for the time being entitled to those rights.
- (6) In this section any reference to a right included in an interest in land is a reference to a right which is exercisable only by virtue of, and as a right incidental to, the ownership of that interest.

**Textual Amendments**

**F122** Word in s. 55 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); [S.I. 1996/186, art. 3](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C42** S. 55 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), **20(1)**

**56 Determination of application under section 55.**

- (1) The Secretary of State, in determining any application under section 55 above in respect of any licence, shall take into account any representations in writing received by him, within the period mentioned in subsection (4) of that section, from the [<sup>F123</sup>Agency] or from the holder of the licence.
- (2) Before determining on an application under section 55 above whether a licence should be revoked or varied the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit—
  - (a) cause a local inquiry to be held; or
  - (b) afford to the applicant, the holder of the licence and the [<sup>F123</sup>Agency] an opportunity of appearing before, and being heard by, a person appointed by the Secretary of State for the purpose;and the Secretary of State shall act as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above if a request is made by the applicant, the holder of the licence or the [<sup>F123</sup>Agency] to be heard with respect to the proposals.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) and (5) below, on an application under section 55 above in respect of any licence, the Secretary of State shall not determine that the licence shall be revoked or varied unless—
  - (a) the grounds of the application, as mentioned in subsection (3) of that section, are established to his satisfaction; and
  - (b) he is satisfied that the extent of the loss or damage which the applicant has sustained, as mentioned in that subsection, is such as to justify the revocation or variation of the licence.
- (4) On an application under section 55 above in respect of any licence, the Secretary of State shall not determine that the licence shall be revoked or varied if he is satisfied that the fact that the abstraction of water in pursuance of the licence caused the loss or damage which the applicant has sustained, as mentioned in subsection (3) of that section, was wholly or mainly attributable to exceptional shortage of rain or to an accident or other unforeseen act or event not caused by, and outside the control of, the [<sup>F123</sup>Agency].
- (5) Where the Secretary of State determines, on an application under section 55 above, that a licence shall be varied, the variation shall be limited to that which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, is requisite having regard to the loss or damage which the applicant has sustained as mentioned in subsection (3) of that section.
- (6) Where the decision of the Secretary of State on an application under section 55 above in respect of any licence is that the licence should be revoked or varied, the decision shall include a direction to the [<sup>F123</sup>Agency] to revoke the licence or, as the case may be, to vary it so as to contain such provisions as may be specified in the direction.
- (7) A decision of the Secretary of State on an application under section 55 above shall be final.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F123** Words in s. 56 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C43** S. 56 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by **Water Resources (Abstraction and Impounding) Regulations 2006** (S.I. 2006/641), regs. 1(2), **20(2)**

### 57 Emergency variation of licences for spray irrigation purposes.

- (1) This section applies where at any time—
  - (a) one or more licences under this Chapter are in force in relation to a source of supply authorising water abstracted in pursuance of the licences to be used for the purpose of spray irrigation, or for that purpose together with other purposes; and
  - (b) by reason of exceptional shortage of rain or other emergency, it appears to the [F124Agency] that it is necessary to impose a temporary restriction on the abstraction of water for use for that purpose.
- (2) Subject to subsections (3) and (4) below, where this section applies the [F124Agency] may serve a notice on the holder of any of the licences reducing, during such period as may be specified in the notice, the quantity of water authorised to be abstracted in pursuance of the licence from the source of supply for use for the purpose of spray irrigation; and, in relation to that period, the licence shall have effect accordingly subject to that reduction.
- (3) The [F124Agency] shall not serve a notice under this section in respect of abstraction of water from underground strata unless it appears to the [F124Agency] that such abstraction is likely to affect the flow, level or volume of any inland waters which are neither discrete waters nor inland waters comprised in an order under section 33 above.
- (4) In the exercise of the power conferred by this section in a case where there are two or more licences under this Chapter in force authorising abstraction from the same source of supply either at the same point or at points which, in the opinion of the [F124Agency], are not far distant from each other—
  - (a) the [F124Agency] shall not serve a notice under this section on the holder of one of the licences unless a like notice is served on the holders of the other licences in respect of the same period; and
  - (b) the reductions imposed by the notices on the holders of the licences shall be so calculated as to represent, as nearly as appears to the [F124Agency] to be practicable, the same proportion of the quantity of water authorised by the licences (apart from the notices) to be abstracted for use for the purpose of spray irrigation.
- (5) The provisions of this section shall have effect without prejudice to the exercise of any power conferred by sections 51 to 54 above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F124** Words in s. 57 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C44 S. 57 modified (18.5.1992) by S.I. 1992/1096, art. 4
- C45 S. 57(1)(2)(4) modified (18.5.1992) by S.I. 1992/1096, arts. 3, 4, Sch.

F125 58

**Textual Amendments**

- F125 S. 58 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 136, Sch. 24 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3(xxix)

**59 Regulations with respect to modification applications.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the manner in which applications for the revocation or variation of licences under this Chapter are to be dealt with, including provision requiring the giving of notices of, and information relating to, the making of such applications or decisions on any such applications.
- (2) Subsection (1) above shall have effect subject to any express provision contained in, or having effect by virtue of, any other enactment contained in this Chapter; and any regulations made under this section shall have effect subject to any such express provision.

*F126 Transfer and apportionment of licences*

**Textual Amendments**

- F126 Ss. 59A-59D and cross-heading inserted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 23(1), 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(m) (with Sch. para. 3)

**59A Transfer of licence**

- (1) The following licences—
  - (a) a full licence;
  - (b) a transfer licence; or
  - (c) a licence to obstruct or impede the flow of inland waters by means of impounding works,may be transferred by the holder of the licence to another person (“the transferee”) in accordance with the following provisions of this section.
- (2) The holder and the proposed transferee shall give notice (a “transfer notice”) to the Agency of their agreement that the licence should be transferred.
- (3) The transfer notice shall include—
  - (a) such information as the Agency reasonably requires; and
  - (b) (in the case of the transfer of a full licence or of a transfer licence) a declaration by the proposed transferee that—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) he has, or at the time when the proposed transfer is to take effect will have, a right of access in relation to each point of abstraction; and
  - (ii) he will continue to have such a right for the period of at least one year beginning with the date on which the proposed transfer is to take effect, or until the licence is to expire (if sooner),
- and may specify the date on which the holder and the transferee wish the transfer to take effect.
- (4) If the holder is a person in whom the licence has vested under section 59B below, a transfer notice shall be of no effect unless the notice required by section 59B(4) has been given.
- (5) Subject to subsection (4) above, if the Agency receives a transfer notice which complies with the requirements of subsections (2) and (3) above, the Agency shall amend the licence by substituting the name of the transferee as holder of the licence.
- (6) The transfer shall take effect—
- (a) from the date on which the Agency amends the licence; or
  - (b) from the date specified in the transfer notice, if later.
- (7) Nothing in this section shall affect the liability of the holder of the licence for any failure by him, before the transfer took effect, to comply with any condition or requirement of that licence.
- (8) In this section—
- “point of abstraction” means a place where the licence authorises water to be abstracted from inland waters or (as the case may be) a place consisting of or comprising underground strata from which the licence authorises water to be abstracted; and
  - “right of access” means, in relation to a point of abstraction, a right of access to land of the kind referred to in subsection (2)(a) or, as the case may be, (3)(a) of section 35 above; and references to a person who will have such a right of access shall be construed in accordance with that section (including subsections (4) to (6)).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C46** S. 59A applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), 21

**59B Vesting of licence on death or bankruptcy of holder**

- (1) On the death of the holder of a licence under this Chapter, the licence shall be regarded as property forming part of the deceased’s personal estate, whether or not it would be so regarded apart from this subsection, and shall accordingly vest in his personal representatives.
- (2) If a bankruptcy order is made against the holder of a licence under this Chapter, the licence shall be regarded for the purposes of any of the Second Group of Parts of the Insolvency Act 1986 (insolvency of individuals; bankruptcy) as property forming part of the bankrupt’s estate, whether or not it would be so regarded apart from this subsection, and shall accordingly vest as such in the trustee in bankruptcy.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) A person in whom a licence vests under this section shall become the holder of the licence, in place of the prior holder, from the date of the vesting.
- (4) Where a licence other than a temporary licence vests in any person under this section, that person shall give notice of that fact to the Agency not later than the end of the period of fifteen months beginning with the date of the vesting.
- (5) If—
  - (a) a licence vests in any person under this section; but
  - (b) that person fails to give the notice required by subsection (4) above within the period mentioned there,the licence shall cease to have effect.

### **59C Apportionment of licence to abstract**

- (1) The holder of a full licence or of a transfer licence (the “old licence”) may apply to the Agency for the division of the holder’s right to abstract water in accordance with the old licence and for the transfer—
  - (a) to another person of part, or to a number of other persons of parts not amounting to the whole; or
  - (b) to a number of other persons of parts amounting in all to the whole,of that right.
- (2) The holder of the old licence and any person proposing to carry on a part of the abstraction authorised by the old licence in place of the holder (a “successor”) shall give notice to the Agency of their agreement to the division and transfer (an “apportionment notice”).
- (3) The apportionment notice shall, in relation to the abstraction authorised by the old licence—
  - (a) specify, for each proposed successor, what quantity of water he proposes to abstract, and (if the holder of the old licence is to continue the abstraction in part) what quantity of water he proposes to abstract;
  - (b) specify the purpose or purposes for which those persons referred to in paragraph (a) above who would require a new licence granted under subsection (5) below would abstract water (being one or more of the purposes for which abstraction is authorised under the old licence);
  - (c) specify the point (or points) of abstraction from which it is proposed that the persons referred to in paragraph (a) above would abstract water (being one or more of the points from which abstraction is authorised under the old licence);
  - (d) include a declaration by each of those persons who requires a licence under this Chapter in order to carry on the abstraction that—
    - (i) he has, or at the time when the proposed grant to him of a new licence under subsection (5) below is to take effect will have, a right of access in relation to each such point of abstraction; and
    - (ii) he will continue to have such a right for the period of at least one year beginning with the date on which the new licence is to take effect, or until it is to expire (if sooner); and
  - (e) include such other information as the Agency reasonably requires,and may specify the date on which the holder and the successor (or successors) wish the division and transfer (or transfers) to take effect.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) The apportionment notice shall be accompanied by an application on the part of the holder of the old licence for its revocation.
- (5) Subject to subsection (9) below, if the Agency receives an apportionment notice and the application for revocation referred to in subsection (4) above, the Agency shall—
  - (a) revoke the old licence;
  - (b) if the holder is to continue the abstraction in part and a licence is required under this Chapter for that purpose, grant to the holder of the old licence a licence relating to that part of the abstraction; and
  - (c) grant to each successor who requires a licence under this Chapter in order to carry on his part of the abstraction a licence relating to that part of the abstraction.
- (6) Sections 34 to 45 above shall not apply to the grant of a new licence under subsection (5) above.
- (7) Subject to section 46 above and to any provision of regulations made under section 59D(1) below, each new licence to be granted under subsection (5) above shall be granted subject to provisions which correspond as nearly as practicable to those of the old licence in relation to the part of the abstraction to be authorised by the new licence.
- (8) The revocation of the old licence and the grant of the new licences shall take effect—
  - (a) from the date on which the Agency revokes the old licence and grants the new ones; or
  - (b) from the date specified in the apportionment notice, if later.
- (9) The Agency shall not grant a new licence to the holder of the old licence or to a successor if, by virtue of an exemption, the restriction on abstraction would not apply to that part of the abstraction proposed in relation to him in the apportionment notice.
- (10) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person (whether the holder of the old licence or a successor) who proposes to carry on a part of the abstraction in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (9) above shall, if the old licence was a full licence, be taken to have the right to do so in relation to that part, subject to subsection (11) below.
- (11) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person shall cease to be taken to have a right, by virtue of subsection (10) above, to carry on an abstraction if—
  - (a) during a period mentioned in subsection (12) below that person does not carry out any such abstraction; or
  - (b) following an order under section 27A(1) above or regulations under section 33A above, that person is granted a full licence in respect of abstraction from the same point.
- (12) The period referred to in subsection (11)(a) above is—
  - (a) four years; or
  - (b) if the abstractions authorised under the old licence were abstractions planned to be carried out at intervals of more than four years, or abstractions for emergency purposes only, such longer period as the Agency may determine on the application of the person in question.
- (13) For the purposes of section 39A above, a new licence granted under subsection (5) above shall be treated—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) as if it had been granted at the time the old licence was granted; and
- (b) as if it and any other new licence granted by virtue of the relevant apportionment notice had been granted in place of the old licence.

(14) In this section—

“exemption” means the disapplication of the restriction on abstraction under or by virtue of section 27 or 33A above; and

“point of abstraction” and “right of access” have the same meanings as in section 59A above.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C47 S. 59C applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), 22

**59D Apportionment of licence to abstract: supplementary**

- (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations about the provisions to be contained in licences granted under section 59C above.
- (2) Nothing in section 59C above shall affect the liability of the holder of the old licence for any failure by him, before the revocation of that licence took effect, to comply with any condition or requirement of that licence.
- (3) If the holder of the old licence is a person in whom the old licence has vested under section 59B above, an apportionment notice shall be of no effect unless the notice required by section 59B(4) has been given.
- (4) In this section, “apportionment notice” and “old licence” have the same meanings as in section 59C above.]

*Remedies and compensation in respect of infringement of protected rights etc.*

**60 Liability of the [F127 Agency] for derogation from protected right.**

- (1) A breach of the duty imposed by subsection (1) of section 39 above (including that duty as applied by section 51(3) or 53(5) above) shall neither invalidate the grant or variation of a licence nor be enforceable by any criminal proceedings, by prohibition or injunction or by action against any person other than the [F127 Agency].
- (2) Instead, the duty referred to in subsection (1) above shall be enforceable, at the suit of any person entitled to a protected right for the purposes of this Chapter, by an action against the [F127 Agency] for damages for breach of statutory duty.
- (3) Where under any provision of this Chapter, the [F127 Agency] is directed by the Secretary of State to grant or vary a licence, and the licence, as granted or varied in compliance with the direction, authorises derogation from protected rights, then—
  - (a) the grant or variation of the licence shall, as between the [F127 Agency] and the person entitled to those rights, have effect as a breach on the part of the [F127 Agency] of a statutory duty not to authorise derogation from those rights; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) subsection (2) above shall apply in relation to that statutory duty as it applies in relation to the duty imposed by section 39(1) above.
- (4) Subsection (3) above shall be without prejudice to the duty of the [F127 Agency], to comply with the direction in question, but that duty shall not afford any defence in an action brought by virtue of paragraph (b) of that subsection.
- (5) In any action brought against the [F127 Agency] in pursuance of this section it shall be a defence for the [F127 Agency] to show that the fact, as the case may be—
- (a) that the abstraction of water authorised by the licence, as granted or varied by the [F127 Agency], derogated from the plaintiff's protected right; or
  - (b) that the obstruction or impeding of the flow of the inland waters authorised by the licence, as so granted or varied, derogated from the plaintiff's protected right,
- was wholly or mainly attributable to exceptional shortage of rain or to an accident or other unforeseen act or event not caused by, and outside the control of, the [F127 Agency].
- (6) This section has effect subject to the provision made by Schedule 7 to this Act.
- (7) In this section any reference to authorising a derogation from protected rights is a reference to so authorising—
- (a) the abstraction of water; or
  - (b) the flow of any inland waters to be obstructed or impeded by means of impounding works,
- as to derogate from rights which, at the time of the authorisation, are protected rights for the purposes of this Chapter.

#### Textual Amendments

**F127** Words in s. 60 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); [S.I. 1996/186, art. 3](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C48** S. 60 applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), regs. 1(2), [23](#)

## 61 Compensation where licence modified on direction of the Secretary of State.

- (1) Where a licence is revoked or varied in pursuance of a direction under section 54 or [F128 56] above and it is shown that the holder of the licence—
- (a) has incurred expenditure in carrying out work which is rendered abortive by the revocation or variation; or
  - (b) has otherwise sustained loss or damage which is directly attributable to the revocation or variation,
- the [F129 Agency] shall pay him compensation in respect of that expenditure, loss or damage.
- (2) For the purposes of this section, any expenditure incurred in the preparation of plans for the purposes of any work, or upon other similar matters preparatory to any work, shall be taken to be included in the expenditure incurred in carrying out that work.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) Subject to subsection (2) above and to Schedule 7 to this Act, no compensation shall be paid under this section—
- (a) in respect of any work carried out before the grant of the licence which is revoked or varied; or
  - (b) in respect of any other loss or damage arising out of anything done or omitted to be done before the grant of that licence.
- (4) No compensation shall be payable under this section in respect of a licence to abstract water, if it is shown that no water was abstracted in pursuance of the licence during the period of [<sup>F130</sup>four] years ending with the date on which notice of the proposals for revoking or varying the licence was served on the holder of the licence.
- [<sup>F131</sup>(4A) No compensation shall be payable under this section in respect of the variation of a full licence, or of a transfer licence which specifies a minimum value under section 46(2A) above, so as to reduce the quantity of water which the holder of the licence is authorised by the licence to abstract from the source of supply to which the licence relates if—
- (a) the ground for varying the licence is that the Secretary of State is satisfied that the variation is necessary in order to protect the availability of water in the source of supply to which the licence relates;
  - (b) the variation does not reduce the quantity of water which the holder of the licence is authorised by the licence to abstract to less than the minimum value specified in the licence under section 46(2A) above for the purposes of this subsection; and
  - (c) the conditions set out in subsection (4B) below are satisfied.
- (4B) Those conditions are that—
- (a) the licence was granted after the coming into force of section 19 of the Water Act 2003;
  - (b) the variation is made no sooner than the end of the period of six years beginning with the date on which the licence took effect; and
  - (c) the variation takes effect no sooner than the end of the period of six years beginning with the date of the variation.]

(5) Any question of disputed compensation under this section shall be referred to and determined by the [<sup>F132</sup>Upper Tribunal] ; and in relation to the determination of any such compensation the provisions of [<sup>F133</sup>section] 4 of the <sup>M11</sup>Land Compensation Act 1961 shall apply, subject to any necessary modifications.

(6) For the purpose of assessing any compensation under this section, in so far as that compensation is in respect of loss or damage consisting of depreciation of the value of an interest in land, the rules set out in section 5 of the Land Compensation Act 1961 shall, so far as applicable and subject to any necessary modifications, have effect as they have effect for the purpose of assessing compensation for the compulsory acquisition of an interest in land.

(7) Where the interest in land, in respect of which any compensation falls to be assessed in accordance with subsection (6) above, is subject to a mortgage—

    - (a) the compensation shall be assessed as if the interest were not subject to the mortgage;
    - (b) a claim for the compensation may be made by any mortgagee of the interest, but without prejudice to the making of a claim by the person entitled to the interest;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) no such compensation shall be payable in respect of the interest of the mortgagee (as distinct from the interest which is subject to the mortgage);
- (d) any such compensation which is payable in respect of the interest which is subject to the mortgage shall be paid to the mortgagee or, if there is more than one mortgagee, to the first mortgagee, and shall in either case be applied by him as if it were proceeds of sale.

#### Textual Amendments

- F128** Word in s. 61(1) substituted (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), s. 105(3), [Sch. 7 para. 6](#); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(y), [Sch. 2](#) (with [Sch. 3 para. 7](#))
- F129** Word in s. 61 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120, [Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#)
- F130** Word in s. 61(4) substituted (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), [ss. 25\(2\)](#), 105(3) (with s. 25(4)); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(h) (with [Sch. 3 para. 7](#))
- F131** S. 61(4A)(4B) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), [ss. 25\(3\)](#), 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(n)
- F132** Words in s. 61(5) substituted (1.6.2009) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 228\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 5](#))
- F133** Word in s. 61(5) substituted (1.6.2009) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. 1 para. 228\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 5](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C49** S. 61 modified (1.4.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), [ss. 27\(2\)](#), 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(i) (with [Sch. 3 para. 7](#))
- C50** S. 61 excluded (1.4.2006) by [Water Resources \(Abstraction and Impounding\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/641\)](#), [regs. 1\(2\)](#), [24](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M11** [1961 c. 33](#).

### [<sup>F134</sup>61A Recovery of compensation from new licence-holder

- (1) This section applies where compensation has been paid under section 61 above to the holder of a licence (“licence A”) following its revocation, and—
  - (a) the holder of licence A was a water undertaker;
  - (b) at the time of the revocation an application from a qualifying person for a licence to abstract water (“licence B”) was outstanding;
  - (c) if the Agency had granted licence B while licence A still had effect, the Agency would have been in breach of the duty imposed on it by section 39(1) above owed to the holder of licence A;
  - (d) the ground for revoking licence A was that the Agency was of the view that in the interests of greater efficiency in the use of water resources it would be better for licence B to be granted and licence A revoked; and
  - (e) the Agency proposes to grant licence B.
- (2) If this section applies, the Agency may (if licence B is granted) recover from the qualifying person the amount of the compensation referred to in subsection (1) above (or such lesser amount as the Agency determines).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Subsection (6) of section 41 of the 1995 Act (which confers powers to make schemes imposing charges) shall apply to the amount referred to in subsection (2) above as if it were a charge due and payable to the Agency in respect of the subsistence of licence B.
- (4) In this section, “qualifying person” means—
  - (a) a water undertaker; or
  - (b) a person who has made an application for an appointment or variation replacing a company as a water undertaker under section 8 of the Water Industry Act 1991 which has not been determined.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F134** S. 61A inserted (1.10.2004) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 26, 105(3)**; [S.I. 2004/2528, art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. paras. 1, 8](#))

## 62 Compensation for owner of fishing rights applying under section 55.

- (1) Where a licence is revoked or varied on an application under section 55 above, the applicant shall be entitled to compensation from the [<sup>F135</sup>Agency] in respect of the loss or damage which he has sustained as mentioned in subsection (3) of that section.
- (2) Where, on an application under section 55 above for the revocation or variation of a licence, the Secretary of State determines—
  - (a) that the grounds of the application (as mentioned in subsection (3) of that section) have been established to his satisfaction; but
  - (b) that the licence shall not be revoked or varied in pursuance of that application, he shall certify accordingly for the purposes of the following provisions of this section.
- (3) Unless within the period of six months from the date on which a certificate under subsection (2) above is granted either—
  - (a) notice to treat for the acquisition of the fishing rights of the applicant, or of an interest in land which includes those rights, has been served by the [<sup>F135</sup>Agency]; or
  - (b) an offer has been made by the [<sup>F135</sup>Agency] to the owner of those rights to acquire them on compulsory purchase terms or, where the rights subsist only as rights included in an interest in land, to acquire that interest on such terms, the owner of the fishing rights shall be entitled to compensation from the [<sup>F135</sup>Agency].
- (4) The amount of the compensation payable under subsection (3) above in respect of any fishing rights shall be the amount by which—
  - (a) the value of those rights; or
  - (b) where they subsist only as rights included in an interest in land, the value of that interest,is depreciated by the operation of section 48(2) above in relation to the licence to which the application related.
- (5) Any question of disputed compensation under this section shall be referred to and determined by the [<sup>F136</sup>Upper Tribunal] ; and in relation to the determination of any such compensation the provisions of [<sup>F137</sup>section] 4 of the <sup>M12</sup>Land Compensation Act 1961 shall apply, subject to any necessary modifications.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) For the purposes of this section a right or interest is acquired on compulsory purchase terms if it is acquired on terms that the price payable shall be equal to and shall, in default of agreement, be determined in like manner as the compensation which would be payable in respect thereof if the right or interest were acquired compulsorily by the [<sup>F135</sup>Agency].
- (7) Where—
- (a) the Secretary of State, on an application under section 55 above, determines that the licence to which the application relates shall not be revoked or varied and grants a certificate under subsection (2) above; and
  - (b) notice to treat for the acquisition of the fishing rights to which the application related, or of an interest in land in which those rights are included, has been served by the [<sup>F135</sup>Agency] within the period of six months from the date on which that certificate is granted,
- then, for the purpose of assessing compensation in respect of any compulsory acquisition in pursuance of that notice to treat, no account shall be taken of any depreciation of the value of the fishing rights, or of the interest in question, which is applicable to the operation, in relation to that licence, of section 48(2) above.
- (8) Subsections (5) and (6) of section 55 above shall apply for construing references in this section to fishing rights or to rights included in an interest in land as they have effect for construing such references in that section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F135** Words in s. 62 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F136** Words in s. 62(5) substituted (1.6.2009) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 229(a)** (with Sch. 5)
- F137** Word in s. 62(5) substituted (1.6.2009) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions \(Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1307\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 229(b)** (with Sch. 5)

#### Marginal Citations

- M12** 1961 c. 33.

### 63 Secretary of State to indemnify [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] in certain cases.

- (1) Where—
- (a) the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] is liable under section 60 above to pay damages to any person in consequence of the grant or variation of a licence in compliance with a direction given by the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] pay to that person any sum in satisfaction of that liability,
- then, whether an action for recovery of those damages has been brought or not, the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit, pay to the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] the whole or such part as he considers appropriate of the relevant amount.
- (2) If—
- (a) proposals for revoking or varying the licence, in a case falling within subsection (1) above, are formulated by the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency], or an application with respect to any licence is made under section 55 above;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in consequence of those proposals or that application, the licence is revoked or varied; and
  - (c) compensation in respect of the revocation or variation is payable by the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] under section 61 above,  
the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit, pay to the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] the whole or such part as he considers appropriate of the relevant amount.
- (3) Where—
- (a) the Secretary of State determines under section 55 above—
    - (i) that a licence granted in compliance with a direction given by the Secretary of State shall be revoked or varied; or
    - (ii) that a licence shall not be revoked or varied;and
  - (b) in consequence of that determination, compensation is payable by the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] under section 62 above,  
the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit, pay to the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] the whole or such part as he considers appropriate of the relevant amount.
- (4) In this section “the relevant amount” means—
- (a) for the purposes of subsection (1) above, the amount of the sum paid by the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] and, if an action has been brought against the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] in respect of the liability mentioned in that subsection, the amount of any costs reasonably incurred by the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] in connection with the action (including any costs of the plaintiff which the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] was required to pay); and
  - (b) for the purposes of subsections (2) and (3) above, the amount of the compensation and, if any question relating to that compensation is referred to the [<sup>F139</sup>Upper Tribunal], the amount of any costs reasonably incurred by the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] in connection with that reference (including any costs of the claimant which the [<sup>F138</sup>Agency] is required to pay).

#### Textual Amendments

**F138** Words in s. 63 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F139** Words in s. 63(4)(b) substituted (1.6.2009) by *The Transfer of Tribunal Functions (Lands Tribunal and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2009* (S.I. 2009/1307), art. 1, **Sch. 1 para. 230** (with Sch. 5)

#### *Supplemental provisions of Chapter II*

### **64 Abstracting and impounding by the [<sup>F140</sup>Agency].**

- (1) The provisions of this Chapter shall have effect—
- (a) in relation to the abstraction of water by the [<sup>F140</sup>Agency] from sources of supply; and
  - [<sup>F141</sup>(b) in relation to—
    - (i) the construction or alteration by the Agency of impounding works; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) the obstruction or impeding by the Agency of the flow of inland waters by means of impounding works,]
- subject to such exceptions and modifications as may be prescribed.
- (2) Regulations under this section may, in particular, provide for securing—
- (a) that any licence required by the [<sup>F140</sup>Agency] in relation to the matters mentioned in subsection (1) above shall be granted (or be deemed to be granted) by the Secretary of State, and not be granted by the [<sup>F140</sup>Agency];
  - (b) that, in such cases and subject to such conditions as may be prescribed, any licence so required by the [<sup>F140</sup>Agency] shall be deemed to be granted by the Secretary of State unless the Secretary of State requires an application for the licence to be made to him by the [<sup>F140</sup>Agency]; and
  - (c) that where a licence is deemed to be granted as mentioned in paragraph (b) above, the [<sup>F140</sup>Agency] shall give such notice of that fact as may be prescribed.
- (3) Without prejudice to the preceding provisions of this section, section 52 above shall not apply in relation to any licence which by virtue of any regulations under this section is granted or deemed to have been granted by the Secretary of State, except in accordance with regulations under this section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F140** Words in s. 64 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); [S.I. 1996/186, art. 3](#)
- F141** S. 64(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 2\(7\), 105\(3\)](#) (with [s. 2\(10\)](#)); [S.I. 2006/984, art. 2\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. para. 2](#))

#### 65 Licences of right.

Schedule 7 to this Act shall have effect for the purposes of giving effect to provisions conferring an entitlement to licences under this Chapter and with respect to licences granted in pursuance of that entitlement or the entitlement conferred by section 33 of the <sup>M13</sup>Water Resources Act 1963 or paragraph 30 or 31 of Schedule 26 to the <sup>M14</sup>Water Act 1989.

#### Marginal Citations

- M13** [1963 c. 38.](#)
- M14** [1989 c. 15.](#)

#### 66 Inland waters owned or managed by British Waterways Board.

- (1) This section applies to all inland waters owned or managed by the British Waterways Board (“the Board”), except any such inland waters to which the Secretary of State may by order made by statutory instrument direct that this section shall not apply.
- (2) In respect of abstraction from any inland waters to which this section applies—
- <sup>F142</sup>(a) . . . . .
  - (b) no person other than the Board shall be entitled to apply for a licence under this Chapter;



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) in relation to any application by the Board for a licence under this Chapter—
  - (i) section 35 above shall not apply; and
  - (ii) section 37 above shall apply as if [<sup>F143</sup>paragraphs (b) and (c), and the succeeding words, of subsection (3) of that section were omitted.]
- (3) Before making an order under subsection (1) above, the Secretary of State shall consult the Board and the [<sup>F144</sup>Agency].

#### Textual Amendments

- F142** S. 66(2)(a) repealed (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), s. 105\(3\), Sch. 7 para. 7, Sch. 9 Pt. 3](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(s)(i)
- F143** Words in s. 66(2)(c)(ii) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 14\(3\)\(d\), 105\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(i) (with [Sch. paras. 1, 2](#))
- F144** Word in s. 66 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

## 67 Ecclesiastical property.

- (1) Where the relevant land [<sup>F145</sup>is vested in the incumbent of a benefice][<sup>F146</sup>or (in the case of a licence under this Chapter to abstract water) where it is a benefice which has a right of access to the relevant land]—
  - (a) an application for a licence under this Chapter may be made by the [<sup>F147</sup>Diocesan Board of Finance for the diocese in which the land is situated] if the benefice is for the time being vacant; and
  - (b) any reference in this Chapter to the applicant for a licence shall be construed—
    - (i) in relation to any time when the benefice in question is vacant, as a reference to the [<sup>F147</sup>Diocesan Board of Finance for the diocese in which the land is situated]; and
    - (ii) in relation to any time when there is an incumbent of the benefice, as a reference to that incumbent.
- (2) Where the relevant land [<sup>F148</sup>is vested in the incumbent of a benefice][<sup>F146</sup>or (in the case of a licence under this Chapter to abstract water) where it is a benefice which has a right of access to the relevant land], any licence under this Chapter shall provide that (notwithstanding anything in the preceding provisions of this Chapter) whoever is for the time being the incumbent of the benefice shall be the holder of the licence.
- (3) Where a licence under this Chapter provides as mentioned in subsection (2) above—
  - (a) the licence shall not be required to specify the person to whom the licence is granted; and
  - (b) the licence shall be deemed to be held by the [<sup>F149</sup>Diocesan Board of Finance for the diocese in which the land is situated] at any time when the benefice in question is vacant.
- (4) So much of any compensation falling to be paid under this Chapter as is payable—
  - (a) in respect of damage to land which is ecclesiastical property and to the owner of the fee simple in the land; or
  - (b) in respect of depreciation of the value of the fee simple in land which is ecclesiastical property,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

shall be paid (where the fee simple is vested in any person other than the [F150]Diocesan Board of Finance for the diocese in which the land is situated]) to [F151]it], instead of to the person in whom the fee simple is vested.

- (5) Any sums paid under subsection (4) above to the [F152]Diocesan Board of Finance] with reference to any land shall—
- (a) if the land is not consecrated, be applied by [F152;it] for the purposes for which the proceeds of a sale by agreement of the fee simple in the land would be applicable under any enactment or Measure authorising such a sale or disposing of the proceeds of such a sale; and
  - (b) if the land is consecrated, be applied by [F152;it][F152]as if the land had been sold under the Pastoral Measure 1983].
- (6) Where—
- (a) [F153]a Diocesan Board of Finance is] required, by virtue of subsection (3)(b) above, to pay any fee or other charge in respect of a licence under this Chapter; and
  - (b) any moneys are then payable by the [F154]Board] to the incumbent of the benefice in question or subsequently become so payable,
- the [F154]Board] shall be entitled to retain out of those moneys an amount not exceeding the amount of that fee or other charge.
- (7) Where under any provision of this Chapter a document is required to be served on an owner of land and the land is ecclesiastical property, a copy of the document shall be served on the [F155]Diocesan Board of Finance for the diocese in which the land is situated].
- (8) In this section —
- “benefice” means an ecclesiastical benefice of the Church of England;
- “ecclesiastical property” means land which—
- (a) belongs to a benefice;
  - (b) is or forms part of a church subject to the jurisdiction of the bishop of any diocese of the Church of England or the site of a church so subject; or
  - (c) is or forms part of a burial ground so subject;
- and
- “the relevant land”, in relation to a licence under this Chapter or an application for such a licence, means—
- (a) [F156]the land to which an applicant for a licence to abstract water is required by section 35 above to have a right of access; or]
  - (b) in the case of a licence for the purposes of section 25 above or an application for such a licence—
    - (i) the land on which any part of the impounding works [F157]is, or] is to be, or is proposed to be, constructed; or
    - (ii) in relation to an alteration of impounding works, the land on which any part of those works is situated or is to be, or is proposed to be, situated.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F145** Words in s. 67(1) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(b\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F146** Words in s. 67(1)(2) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), s. 105\(3\), Sch. 7 para. 8\(2\)](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(s)(i)
- F147** Words in s. 67(1) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(a\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F148** Words in s. 67(2) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(b\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F149** Words in s. 67(3) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(a\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F150** Words in s. 67(4) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(a\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F151** Word in s. 67(4) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(c\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F152** Words in s. 67(5) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(d\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F153** Words in s. 67(6)(a) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(e\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F154** Words in s. 67(6) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(f\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F155** Words in s. 67(7) substituted (1.10.2006) by [Church of England \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Measure 2006 \(No. 1\), s. 16\(2\), Sch. 5 para. 30\(a\)](#); 2006 No. 2, Instrument made by Archbishops
- F156** Words in s. 67(8) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), s. 105\(3\), Sch. 7 para. 8\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(s)(i)
- F157** Words in s. 67(8) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 2\(8\), 105\(3\) \(with s. 2\(10\)\)](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(b) (with [Sch. para. 2](#))

<sup>F158</sup>68

### Textual Amendments

- F158** S. 68 repealed (21.9.1995) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 22 para. 138, Sch. 24](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\), 115, 117](#)); S.I. 1995/1983, [art. 3](#)

## 69 Validity of decisions of Secretary of State and related proceedings.

- (1) Except as provided by the following provisions of this section, the validity of a decision of the Secretary of State on—
- (a) any appeal to the Secretary of State under this Chapter; or
  - (b) any reference to the Secretary of State in pursuance of a direction under section 41 above or in pursuance of section 53(4) above,
- shall not be questioned in any legal proceedings whatsoever.
- (2) If, in the case of any such appeal or reference, the [<sup>F159</sup>Agency] or the other party desires to question the validity of the decision of the Secretary of State on the grounds—
- (a) that the decision is not within the powers of this Act; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that any of the requirements of, or of any regulations made under, this Chapter which are applicable to the appeal or reference have not been complied with, the [<sup>F159</sup>Agency] or, as the case may be, the other party may, at any time within the period of six weeks beginning with the date on which the decision is made, make an application to the High Court under this section.
- (3) On any application under this section, the High Court may by interim order suspend the operation of the decision to which the application relates until the final determination of the proceedings.
- (4) If the High Court is satisfied, on an application under this section—
- (a) that the decision to which the application relates is not within the powers of this Act; or
  - (b) that the interests of the person making the application under this section have been substantially prejudiced by a failure to comply with any of the requirements mentioned in subsection (2)(b) above,
- the High Court may quash the decision.
- <sup>F160</sup>(5) . . . . .
- (6) In this section—
- “decision” includes a direction; and
- “other party” —
- (a) in relation to an appeal, means the appellant;
  - (b) in relation to a reference in pursuance of a direction under section 41 above, means the applicant for the licence or, where that section applies by virtue of section 51(3) above, for the revocation or variation; and
  - (c) in relation to a reference in pursuance of section 53(4) above, means (subject, without prejudice to their application to the other provisions of this Chapter, to subsections (6) and (7) of section 25 above) the holder of the licence.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F159** Words in s. 69 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F160** S. 69(5) repealed (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), **Sch. 22 para. 138, Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**

## **70 Civil liability under Chapter II.**

Except in so far as this Act otherwise expressly provides and subject to the provisions of section 18 of the <sup>M15</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 (which relates to offences under two or more laws), the restrictions imposed by sections [<sup>F161</sup>24 and 25] above shall not be construed as—

- (a) conferring a right of action in any civil proceedings (other than proceedings for the recovery of a fine) in respect of any contravention of those restrictions;
- (b) affecting any restriction imposed by or under any other enactment, whether contained in a public general Act or in a local or private Act; or
- (c) derogating from any right of action or other remedy (whether civil or criminal) in proceedings instituted otherwise than under this Chapter.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F161** Words in s. 70 substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 8(4)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(e) (with [Sch. paras. 4, 5](#))

#### Marginal Citations

**M15** 1978 c. 30.

## 71 Modification of local enactments.

- (1) If it appears to the Secretary of State by whom an order is made under a provision of this Chapter to which this section applies that any local enactment passed or made before the relevant date—
  - (a) is inconsistent with any of the provisions of that order; or
  - (b) requires to be amended or adapted, having regard to any of the provisions of that order,the Secretary of State may by order repeal, amend or adapt that enactment to such extent, or in such manner, as he may consider appropriate.
- (2) Any order under this section may include such transitional, incidental, supplementary and consequential provisions as the Secretary of State may consider necessary or expedient.
- (3) The power to make an order under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (4) This section applies to the following provisions of this Chapter, that is to say, sections 33, 66, 68 and 72(5).
- (5) In this section—

“local enactment” means—

  - (a) a local or private Act;
  - (b) a public general Act relating to London;
  - (c) an order or scheme made under an Act, confirmed by Parliament or brought into operation in accordance with special parliamentary procedure; or
  - (d) an enactment in a public general Act amending a local or private Act or any such order or scheme;

“relevant date” means the date which was the second appointed day for the purposes of section 133 of the <sup>M16</sup>Water Resources Act 1963.
- (6) The provisions of this section shall have effect without prejudice to the exercise of any other power to repeal, amend or adapt local enactments which is conferred by any other enactment.

#### Marginal Citations

**M16** 1963 c. 38.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 72 Interpretation of Chapter II.

(1) In this Chapter—

“derogate”, in relation to a protected right, shall be construed in accordance with section 39(4) above;

“flow” shall be construed subject to section 23(3) above;

[<sup>F162</sup>“full licence” has the meaning given in section 24A above;]

“impounding works” has the meaning given by section 25(8) above;

“licence”, in relation to the variation or revocation of a licence, shall be construed subject to section 25(6) and (7) above;

“protected right” shall be construed in accordance with [<sup>F163</sup>section 39A] above;

“the restriction on abstraction” means the restriction imposed by section 24(1) above;

“the restriction on impounding works” means the restriction imposed by section [<sup>F164</sup>25(1)(a) and (b)] above;

“spray irrigation” means (subject to subsection (5) below) the irrigation of land or plants (including seeds) by means of water or other liquid emerging (in whatever form) from apparatus designed or adapted to eject liquid into the air in the form of jets or spray; and

“statutory provision” means a provision (whether of a general or special nature) which is contained in, or in any document made or issued under, any Act (whether of a general or special nature).

[<sup>F162</sup>“temporary licence” and “transfer licence” have the meanings given in section 24A above.]

(2) References in this Chapter to a watercourse shall not include references—

- (a) to any sewer or part of a sewer vested in—
- (i) a sewerage undertaker;
  - (ii) a local authority or joint planning board;
  - (iii) the [<sup>F165</sup>new towns residuary body] or a development corporation for a new town;
  - (iv) a harbour board within the meaning of the <sup>M17</sup>Railway and Canal Traffic Act 1888;

or

- (b) to any adit or passage constructed in connection with a well, borehole or other similar work for facilitating the collection of water in the well, borehole or work.

[<sup>F166</sup>(2A) In subsection (2)(a)(iii) “new towns residuary body” means—

- (a) in relation to England, the Homes and Communities Agency so far as exercising functions in relation to anything transferred (or to be transferred) to it as mentioned in section 52(1)(a) to (d) of the Housing and Regeneration Act 2008; and
- (b) in relation to Wales, the Welsh Ministers so far as exercising functions in relation to anything transferred (or to be transferred) to them as mentioned in section 36(1)(a)(i) to (iii) of the New Towns Act 1981.]

(3) Any reference in this Chapter to the doing of anything in pursuance of a licence under this Chapter is a reference to its being done—

- (a) by the holder of such a licence; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) by a person acting as a servant or agent of, or otherwise under the authority of, the holder of such a licence,  
at a time when the licence is in force and in circumstances such that, if no such licence were in force, the doing of that thing would contravene a restriction imposed by this Chapter.
- (4) For the purposes of this Chapter land shall be taken to be contiguous to any inland waters notwithstanding that it is separated from those waters by a towpath or by any other land used, or acquired for use, in connection with the navigation of the inland waters, unless that other land comprises any building or works other than a lock, pier, wharf, landing-stage or similar works.
- (5) The Ministers may by order direct that references to spray irrigation in this Chapter, and in any other enactments in which “spray irrigation” is given the same meaning as in this Chapter, or such of those references as may be specified in the order—
- (a) shall be construed as not including spray irrigation if carried out by such methods or in such circumstances or for such purposes as may be specified in the order; and
- (b) without prejudice to the exercise of the power conferred by virtue of paragraph (a) above, shall be construed as including references to the carrying out, by such methods or in such circumstances or for such purposes as may be specified in the order, of irrigation of any such description, other than spray irrigation, as may be so specified.
- (6) The power of the Ministers to make an order under subsection (5) above shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

- F162** Words in s. 72(1) inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 1(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(a) (with [Sch. paras. 1, 2](#))
- F163** Words in s. 72(1) substituted (1.4.2005) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 17(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2005/968, art. 2(d) (with [Sch. 1 para. 2](#))
- F164** Words in s. 72(1) substituted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 2(9)**, 105(3) (with s. 2(10)); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(b) (with [Sch. para. 2](#))
- F165** Words in s. 72(2)(a)(iii) substituted (1.12.2008) by [Housing and Regeneration Act 2008 \(c. 17\)](#), s. 325(1), **Sch. 8 para. 60(2)**; S.I. 2008/3068, art. 2(1)(w)(3) (with arts. 6-13)
- F166** S. 72(2A) inserted (1.12.2008) by [Housing and Regeneration Act 2008 \(c. 17\)](#), s. 325(1), **Sch. 8 para. 60(3)**; S.I. 2008/3068, art. 2(1)(w)(3) (with arts. 6-13)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C51** S. 72(2)(a) applied (with modifications) (4.6.1996) by S.I. 1996/1243, art. 18, **Sch. 5 Pt. II para. 6(2)(a)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M17** 1888 c. 25.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### CHAPTER III

#### DROUGHT

#### 73 Power to make ordinary and emergency drought orders.

- [<sup>F167</sup>(1) If the Secretary of State is satisfied that, by reason of an exceptional shortage of rain, there exists or is threatened—
- (a) a serious deficiency of supplies of water in any area, or
  - (b) such a deficiency in the flow or level of water in any inland waters as to pose a serious threat to any of the flora or fauna which are dependent on those waters,
- then,], subject to the following provisions of this Chapter, he may by order (in this Chapter referred to as an “ordinary drought order”) make such provision authorised by this Chapter as appears to him to be expedient with a view to meeting the deficiency.
- (2) If the Secretary of State—
- (a) is satisfied that, by reason of an exceptional shortage of rain, a serious deficiency of supplies of water in any area exists or is threatened; and
  - (b) is further satisfied that the deficiency is such as to be likely to impair the economic or social well-being of persons in the area,
- then, subject to the following provisions of this Chapter, he may by order (in this Chapter referred to as an “emergency drought order”) make such provision authorised by this Chapter as appears to him to be expedient with a view to meeting the deficiency.
- (3) Subject to section 76(3) below, the power to make a drought order in relation to any area shall not be exercisable [<sup>F168</sup>unless] an application is made to the Secretary of State—
- (a) by the [<sup>F169</sup>Agency]; or
  - (b) [<sup>F170</sup>except in the case of an ordinary drought order by virtue of subsection (1) (b) above,]by a water undertaker which supplies water to premises in that area.
- (4) The power to make a drought order shall be exercisable by statutory instrument; and Schedule 8 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the procedure on an application for such an order.

#### Textual Amendments

- F167** Words in s. 73(1) substituted (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 139(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**
- F168** Words in s. 73 substituted (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 139(3)(a)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**
- F169** Word in s. 73 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F170** Words in s. 73 inserted (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 139(3)(b)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**

#### 74 Provisions and duration of ordinary drought order.

- (1) An ordinary drought order made on the application of the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] may contain any of the following provisions, that is to say—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) provision authorising the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] (or persons authorised to do so by the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency]) to take water from any source specified in the order subject to any conditions or restrictions so specified;
  - (b) provision authorising the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] (or persons authorised to do so by the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency]) to discharge water to any place specified in the order subject to any conditions or restrictions so specified;
  - (c) provision authorising the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] to prohibit or limit the taking by any person (including a water undertaker) of water from a source specified in the order if the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] is satisfied that the taking of water from that source seriously affects the supplies available to the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency], any water undertaker or any other person;
  - (d) provision suspending or modifying, subject to any conditions specified in the order, any restriction or obligation to which the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency], any water undertaker or sewerage undertaker or any other person is subject as respects—
    - (i) the taking of water from any source;
    - (ii) the discharge of water;
    - (iii) the supply of water (whether in point of quantity, pressure, quality, means of supply or otherwise); or
    - (iv) the filtration or other treatment of water;
  - (e) provision authorising the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] to suspend or vary, or attach conditions to, any [<sup>F172</sup>environmental permit] specified in the order for the discharge of any effluent by any person, including any sewerage undertaker or water undertaker.
- (2) An ordinary drought order made on the application of a water undertaker may contain any of the following provisions, that is to say—
- (a) provision authorising the water undertaker to take water from any source specified in the order subject to any conditions or restrictions so specified;
  - (b) provision authorising the water undertaker to prohibit or limit the use of water for any purpose specified in the order, being a purpose for the time being set out in a direction given by the Secretary of State to water undertakers generally as a purpose which may be specified by virtue of this paragraph in any ordinary drought order;
  - (c) provision authorising the water undertaker to discharge water to any place specified in the order subject to any conditions or restrictions so specified;
  - (d) provision authorising the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] to prohibit or limit the taking by any person of water from a source specified in the order if the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] is satisfied that the taking of water from that source seriously affects the supplies available to the water undertaker;
  - (e) provision prohibiting or limiting the taking by the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] of water from a source specified in the order if the taking of water from that source is determined, in accordance with provision made by the order, seriously to affect the supplies available to the water undertaker;
  - (f) provision suspending or modifying, subject to any conditions specified in the order, any restriction or obligation to which the water undertaker or any sewerage undertaker or other person is subject as respects—
    - (i) the taking of water from any source;
    - (ii) the discharge of water;
    - (iii) the supply of water (whether in point of quantity, pressure, quality, means of supply or otherwise); or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (iv) the filtration or other treatment of water;
  - (g) provision authorising the [<sup>F171</sup>Agency] to suspend or vary, or attach conditions to, any [<sup>F173</sup>environmental permit] specified in the order for the discharge of any effluent by any person, including the company which applied for the order (whether in the capacity in which it made the application, in its capacity as a sewerage undertaker or in any other capacity).
- (3) The period for which—
- (a) an authorisation given by or under an ordinary drought order;
  - (b) a prohibition or limitation imposed by or under any such order; or
  - (c) a suspension or modification effected by or under any such order,
- has effect shall expire before the end of the period of six months beginning with the day on which the order comes into force, unless that period of six months is extended, in relation to that order, by virtue of the exercise by the Secretary of State of his power (subject to subsection (4) below) to amend the order.
- (4) The power of the Secretary of State to amend an ordinary drought order shall not be exercised so as to extend the period of six months mentioned in subsection (3) above beyond the end of the period of one year beginning with the day on which that order came into force.
- (5) Without prejudice to the following provisions of this Chapter, an ordinary drought order may—
- (a) make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities; and
  - (b) contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

- F171** Words in s. 74 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F172** Words in s. 74(1)(e) substituted (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(3)(a)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F173** Words in s. 74(2)(g) substituted (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(3)(a)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

## 75 Provisions and duration of emergency drought order.

- (1) An emergency drought order made on the application of the [<sup>F174</sup>Agency] may contain any of the provisions which could be included, by virtue of section 74(1) above, in an ordinary drought order made on the application of the [<sup>F174</sup>Agency].
- (2) An emergency drought order made on the application of a water undertaker may contain any of the following provisions, that is to say—
- (a) any provision which could be included, by virtue of subsection (2) of section 74 above, in an ordinary drought order made on the application of a water undertaker, except provision authorised by paragraph (b) of that subsection;
  - (b) provision authorising the water undertaker to prohibit or limit the use of water for such purposes as the water undertaker thinks fit;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) provision authorising the water undertaker—
  - (i) to supply water in its area, or in any place within its area, by means of stand-pipes or water tanks; and
  - (ii) to erect or set up and maintain stand-pipes or water tanks in any street in that area.
- (3) The period for which—
  - (a) an authorisation given by or under an emergency drought order;
  - (b) a prohibition or limitation imposed by or under any such order; or
  - (c) a suspension or modification effected by or under any such order,has effect shall expire before the end of the period of three months beginning with the day on which the order comes into force unless that period of three months is extended, in relation to that order, by virtue of the exercise by the Secretary of State of his power (subject to subsection (4) below) to amend the order.
- (4) The power of the Secretary of State to amend an emergency drought order shall not be exercised so as to extend the period of three months mentioned in subsection (3) above beyond the end of the period of five months beginning with the day on which that order came into force.
- (5) Where powers have been conferred by an emergency drought order on any person—
  - (a) the Secretary of State may give to that person such directions as he considers necessary or expedient as to the manner in which, or the circumstances in which, any of those powers is or is not to be exercised;
  - (b) it shall be the duty of that person to comply with any such direction; and
  - (c) where that person is a water undertaker or sewerage undertaker, the duty to comply with any such direction shall be enforceable under section 18 of the <sup>M18</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 by the Secretary of State.
- (6) The giving of a direction under subsection (5) above in relation to any power shall not affect—
  - (a) the validity of anything done in the exercise of that power before the giving of the direction; or
  - (b) any obligation or liability incurred before the giving of the direction.
- (7) Without prejudice to the following provisions of this Chapter, an emergency drought order may—
  - (a) make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities; and
  - (b) contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F174** Words in s. 75 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M18** 1991 c. 56.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **76 Provisions of drought order restricting use of water.**

- (1) The following provisions apply where a drought order contains a provision authorising a water undertaker to prohibit or limit the use of water, that is to say—
  - (a) the power may be exercised in relation to consumers generally, a class of consumer or a particular consumer;
  - (b) the water undertaker shall take such steps as it thinks appropriate for bringing the prohibition or limitation to the attention of the persons to whom the prohibition or limitation will apply and, in particular, shall (as the undertaker thinks appropriate)—
    - (i) cause notice of the prohibition or limitation to be published in one or more local newspapers circulating within that part of the water undertaker’s area which would be affected by the provision of the order; or
    - (ii) send notice of the prohibition or limitation to the persons to whom the prohibition or limitation will apply;
  - (c) the prohibition or limitation shall not come into operation until the end of the period of seventy-two hours beginning with the day on which the notice is published or, as the case may be, sent to the person in question.
- (2) The Secretary of State may revoke or vary any direction given by him for the purposes of section 74(2)(b) above by a further direction for those purposes.
- (3) Where any purpose set out in a direction given for the purposes of section 74(2)(b) above will cease, by virtue of the variation or revocation of the direction, to be one which may be specified in an ordinary drought order, the Secretary of State shall (without an application having been made to him) exercise his power to vary or revoke ordinary drought orders, in so far as any orders in force will be affected by the variation or revocation of the direction, so as to make those orders conform to the variation or reflect the revocation.
- (4) The revocation or variation of a direction under subsection (3) above shall not affect either—
  - (a) the validity of anything done in pursuance of an order before the giving of the further direction; or
  - (b) any obligation or liability accrued or incurred before the giving of the further direction.

## **77 Provisions of drought order with respect to abstractions and discharges.**

- (1) Any drought order which-
  - (a) authorises the taking of water from a source from which water is supplied to an inland navigation; or
  - (b) suspends or modifies—
    - (i) a restriction as respects the taking of water from a source from which water is supplied to an inland navigation; or
    - (ii) an obligation to discharge compensation water into a canal or into any river or stream which forms part of, or from which water is supplied to, an inland navigation,

may include provision for prohibiting or imposing limitations on the taking of water from the inland navigation or for the suspension or modification of any obligation to

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

which a navigation authority are subject as respects the discharge of water from the inland navigation.

- (2) A prohibition or limitation by or under a drought order on the taking of water from any source may be imposed so as to have effect in relation to a source from which a person to whom the prohibition or limitation applies has a right to take water whether by virtue of an enactment or instrument, an agreement or the ownership of land.
- (3) Where a drought order made on the application of a water undertaker confers power on the [<sup>F175</sup>Agency]—
  - (a) to prohibit or limit the taking of water from any source; or
  - (b) to suspend or vary, or attach conditions to, any [<sup>F176</sup>environmental permit] for the discharge of any effluent,the [<sup>F175</sup>Agency] shall exercise that power in such manner as will ensure, so far as reasonably practicable, that the supplies of water available to the water undertaker are not seriously affected.

<sup>F177</sup>(4) .....

- (5) Where—
  - (a) any drought order confers power on the [<sup>F175</sup>Agency] to suspend or vary, or attach conditions to, any [<sup>F178</sup>environmental permit] for the discharge of any effluent; and
  - (b) the [<sup>F175</sup>Agency] exercises that power so as to restrict the discharge of effluent by a sewerage undertaker,the sewerage undertaker may so modify any consents or agreements relating to the discharge by other persons of trade effluent as to enable it to comply with any requirements or conditions imposed on it by or under the order with respect to discharges from sewers or works of the undertaker.

- (6) In this section—

“compensation water” means water which a water undertaker or the [<sup>F175</sup>Agency] is under an obligation to discharge—

  - (a) in accordance with the provisions of a licence under Chapter II of this Part into a source of supply; or
  - (b) under any local statutory provision, into any river, stream, brook or other running water or into a canal;

and

“inland navigation” includes any canal or navigable river.

#### Textual Amendments

- F175** Words in s. 77 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F176** Words in s. 77(3)(b) substituted (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(3)(b)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F177** S. 77(4) repealed (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 64(1), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(o)(z)
- F178** Words in s. 77(5)(a) substituted (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(3)(b)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 78 Works under drought orders.

- (1) A drought order may authorise the [<sup>F179</sup>Agency] or a water undertaker, subject to any conditions and restrictions specified in the order, to carry out any works required for the performance of any duty or the exercise of any power which is imposed or conferred by or under the order.
- (2) A drought order authorising the [<sup>F179</sup>Agency] or a water undertaker to carry out any works—
  - (a) may authorise the [<sup>F179</sup>Agency] or that undertaker for that purpose to enter upon any land specified in the order and to occupy and use the land to such extent and in such manner as may be requisite for the carrying out and maintenance of the works; and
  - (b) may apply in relation to the carrying out of the works such of the provisions of Part VII of this Act or Part VI of the <sup>M19</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate, subject to such modifications as may be specified in the order.
- (3) The Secretary of State shall include in any drought order authorising the [<sup>F179</sup>Agency] or a water undertaker to enter any land provisions requiring the [<sup>F179</sup>Agency] or that undertaker to give to the occupier of the land and to such other persons concerned with the land as may be specified in the order not less than twenty-four hours' notice of any intended entry.
- (4) Subject to subsection (3) above, a drought order may make any such provision in relation to provisions of the order authorising any person to enter any land as corresponds to provision having effect by virtue of section 173 below or to provision contained in Part II of Schedule 6 to the Water Industry Act 1991.
- (5) Any works to be carried out under the authority of an emergency drought order shall be included in the definition of emergency works in section 52 of the New Roads and Street Works Act 1991.
- (6) Until the coming into force of section 52 of the <sup>M20</sup>New Roads and Street Works Act 1991, subsection (5) above shall have effect as if the reference to that section were a reference to section 39(1) of the <sup>M21</sup>Public Utilities Street Works Act 1950; but nothing in this section shall be taken to prejudice the power of the Secretary of State under that Act of 1991 to make an order bringing that section 52 into force on different days for different purposes (including the purposes of this section).

### Textual Amendments

**F179** Words in s. 78 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### Marginal Citations

**M19** 1991 c. 56.

**M20** 1991 c. 22.

**M21** 1950 c. 39.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 79 Compensation and charges where drought order made.

- (1) Schedule 9 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the payment of compensation where a drought order has been made.
- (2) Except as provided by Schedule 9 to this Act, neither the [<sup>F180</sup>Agency] nor any water undertaker or sewerage undertaker shall incur any liability to any person for loss or damage sustained by reason of anything done in pursuance of any drought order or of any omission in pursuance of such an order.
- (3) Nothing in any drought order shall affect the right of the [<sup>F180</sup>Agency], a water undertaker or a sewerage undertaker, in the event of an interruption or diminution of the supply of water, to recover any fixed or minimum charge which might have been recovered from any person by the [<sup>F180</sup>Agency] or that undertaker if there had been no such interruption or diminution.
- [<sup>F181</sup>(4) Where a water undertaker makes an application for a drought order, the Agency may recover from the water undertaker any expenses it incurs (whether of a revenue or capital nature)—
  - (a) in connection with any local inquiry held in respect of the application;
  - (b) in the exercise of the Agency's functions so far as their exercise is attributable to the application and (if the order is made) to the order,in so far as those expenses have not been recovered (whether from the water undertaker or not) under or by virtue of any other enactment.
- (5) Sections 125 to 129 below shall not apply in respect of any charges which may be made under subsection (4) above.]

### Textual Amendments

- F180** Words in s. 79 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F181** S. 79(4)(5) added (1.4.2004) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, **ss. 64(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(o)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)

## [<sup>F182</sup>79A Drought permits.

- (1) If the Agency is satisfied that, by reason of an exceptional shortage of rain, a serious deficiency of supplies of water in any area exists or is threatened then, subject to the following provisions of this section, it may, upon the application of a water undertaker which supplies water to premises in that area, issue to that undertaker a drought permit making such provision authorised by this section as appears to the Agency to be expedient with a view to meeting the deficiency.
- (2) A drought permit may contain any of the following provisions, that is to say—
  - (a) provision authorising the water undertaker to which it is issued to take water from any source specified in the permit subject to any conditions or restrictions so specified;
  - (b) provision suspending or modifying, subject to any conditions specified in the permit, any restriction or obligation to which that undertaker is subject as respects the taking of water from any source.
- (3) A drought permit shall specify—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the day on which it comes into force; and
  - (b) the period for which, subject to subsections (4) and (5) below, any authorisation given, or suspension or modification effected, by the permit is to have effect.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5) below, the period for which—
- (a) an authorisation given by a drought permit, or
  - (b) a suspension or modification effected by such a permit,
- has effect shall expire before the end of the period of six months beginning with the day on which the permit comes into force.
- (5) At any time before the expiration of the period for which such an authorisation, suspension or modification has effect, the Agency may, by giving notice to the water undertaker to which the permit in question was issued, extend that period, but not so as to extend it beyond the end of the period of one year beginning with the day on which the permit came into force.
- (6) A drought permit which—
- (a) authorises the taking of water from a source from which water is supplied to an inland navigation; or
  - (b) suspends or modifies—
    - (i) a restriction as respects the taking of water from a source from which water is supplied to an inland navigation; or
    - (ii) an obligation to discharge compensation water into a canal or into any river or stream which forms part of, or from which water is supplied to, an inland navigation,
- shall not be issued without the consent of every navigation authority exercising functions over any or all of the parts of the canal or inland navigation in question which are affected by the permit.
- (7) Schedule 8 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the procedure on an application for a drought permit as it has effect with respect to the procedure on an application for a drought order, but with the following modifications, that is to say—
- (a) with the substitution for any reference to a drought order of a reference to a drought permit;
  - (b) with the substitution for any reference to the Secretary of State of a reference to the Agency;
  - (c) with the omission of the reference to the Agency in the Table in paragraph 1;
  - (d) with the insertion, in paragraph 1(3)(c), of a requirement that the notice in question shall specify the address at which any objections are to be made to the Agency; and
  - (e) with the omission—
    - (i) of paragraph 2(1)(a) and the word “either” immediately preceding it, and
    - (ii) of paragraph 2(6).

<sup>F183</sup>(8) .....

- [ Where a water undertaker makes an application for a drought permit, the Agency may
- <sup>F184</sup>(8A) recover from the water undertaker any expenses it incurs (whether of a revenue or capital nature) in the exercise of its functions so far as their exercise is attributable to—
- (a) the application;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) (if the permit is issued) the permit,  
in so far as those expenses have not been recovered (whether from the water undertaker or not) under or by virtue of any other enactment.
- (8B) Sections 125 to 129 below shall not apply in respect of any charges which may be made under subsection (8A) above.]
- (9) Section 79 above and Schedule 9 to this Act shall apply in relation to drought permits and their issue as they apply in relation to ordinary drought orders and their making.
- (10) A drought permit may—
- (a) make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities; and
  - (b) contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provisions as the Agency considers appropriate.
- (11) In this section—
- “compensation water” has the same meaning as in section 77 above;
  - “drought permit” means a drought permit under this section;
  - “inland navigation” has the same meaning as in section 77 above.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F182** S. 79A inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 140** (with 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F183** S. 79A(8) repealed (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 64(3)(a), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(o)(z)**

**F184** S. 79A(8A)(8B) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 64(3)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(o)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)

## 80 Offences against drought order.

- (1) If any person—
- (a) takes or uses water in contravention of a prohibition or limitation imposed by or under any drought order or takes or uses water otherwise than in accordance with any condition or restriction [<sup>F185</sup>imposed by or under any drought order or by any drought permit]; or
  - (b) discharges water otherwise than in accordance with any condition or restriction imposed by or under such an order,
- he shall be guilty of an offence under this section.
- (2) If any person—
- (a) fails to construct or maintain in good order a gauge, weir or other apparatus for measuring the flow of water which he was required to construct or maintain by any drought order [<sup>F186</sup>or drought permit]; or
  - (b) fails to allow some person authorised for the purpose by or under any such order [<sup>F187</sup>or by virtue of any such permit] to inspect and examine any such apparatus or any records made thereby or kept by that person in connection therewith or to take copies of any such records,
- he shall be guilty of an offence under this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In any proceedings against any person for an offence under this section it shall be a defence for that person to show that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due diligence to avoid the commission of the offence.
- (4) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

#### Textual Amendments

- F185** Words in s. 80(1)(a) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 141(a)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F186** Words in s. 80(2)(a) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 141(b)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F187** Words in s. 80(2)(b) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 141(c)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

## 81 Interpretation of Chapter III.

In this Chapter—

- (a) references to the taking of water include references to the collection, impounding, diversion or appropriation of water; and
- (b) references to an obligation or to a restriction include references to an obligation or, as the case may be, to a restriction which is imposed by or under any enactment or agreement.

## PART III

### CONTROL OF POLLUTION OF WATER RESOURCES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C52** Pt. III (ss. 82-104) modified (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.2.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 5(5)(g) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 2
- C53** Pt. III (ss. 82-104): functions transferred to the Environment Agency (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 2(1)(a)(ii) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- C54** Pt. III: definition of “controlled waters” applied (1.12.1991) by water Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1991 (c. 60, SIF 130), ss. 2(1), 4(2), **Sch. 1 para. 1**

## CHAPTER I

### QUALITY OBJECTIVES

## 82 Classification of quality of waters.

- (1) The Secretary of State may, in relation to any description of controlled waters (being a description applying to some or all of the waters of a particular class or of two or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

more different classes), by regulations prescribe a system of classifying the quality of those waters according to criteria specified in the regulations.

- (2) The criteria specified in regulations under this section in relation to any classification shall consist of one or more of the following, that is to say—
- (a) general requirements as to the purposes for which the waters to which the classification is applied are to be suitable;
  - (b) specific requirements as to the substances that are to be present in or absent from the water and as to the concentrations of substances which are or are required to be present in the water;
  - (c) specific requirements as to other characteristics of those waters;
- and for the purposes of any such classification regulations under this section may provide that the question whether prescribed requirements are satisfied may be determined by reference to such samples as may be prescribed.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C55** S. 82 modified (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/672, art. 5, Sch. 2

**C56** S. 82 amended (27.8.1993) by 1993 c. 12, ss. 40, 51(2), Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para.9 (with s. 46).

**C57** S. 82 modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/2043), reg. 1(b), Sch. 1)

**83 Water quality objectives.**

- (1) For the purpose of maintaining and improving the quality of controlled waters the Secretary of State may, by serving a notice on the [<sup>F188</sup>Agency] specifying—
- (a) one or more of the classifications for the time being prescribed under section 82 above; and
  - (b) in relation to each specified classification, a date, establish the water quality objectives for any waters which are, or are included in, waters of a description prescribed for the purposes of that section.
- (2) The water quality objectives for any waters to which a notice under this section relates shall be the satisfaction by those waters, on and at all times after each date specified in the notice, of the requirements which at the time of the notice were the requirements for the classification in relation to which that date is so specified.
- (3) Where the Secretary of State has established water quality objectives under this section for any waters he may review objectives for those waters if—
- (a) five years or more have elapsed since the service of the last notice under subsection (1) or (6) of this section to be served in respect of those waters; or
  - (b) the [<sup>F188</sup>Agency], after consultation with such water undertakers and other persons as it considers appropriate, requests a review;
- and the Secretary of State shall not exercise his power to establish objectives for any waters by varying the existing objectives for those waters except in consequence of such a review.
- (4) Where the Secretary of State proposes to exercise his power under this section to establish or vary the objectives for any waters he shall—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) give notice setting out his proposal and specifying the period (not being less than three months from the date of publication of the notice) within which representations or objections with respect to the proposal may be made; and
- (b) consider any representations or objections which are duly made and not withdrawn;

and, if he decides, after considering any such representations or objections, to exercise his power to establish or vary those objectives, he may do so either in accordance with the proposal contained in the notice or in accordance with that proposal as modified in such manner as he considers appropriate.

- (5) A notice under subsection (4) above shall be given—
  - (a) by publishing the notice in such manner as the Secretary of State considers appropriate for bringing it to the attention of persons likely to be affected by it; and
  - (b) by serving a copy of the notice on the [<sup>F188</sup>Agency].
- (6) If, on a review under this section or in consequence of any representations or objections made following such a review for the purposes of subsection (4) above, the Secretary of State decides that the water quality objectives for any waters should remain unchanged, he shall serve notice of that decision on the [<sup>F188</sup>Agency].

#### Textual Amendments

**F188** Words in s. 83 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C58** S. 83 amended (20.3.1992) by S.I. 1992/337, **reg. 4**

**C59** S. 83 applied (with modifications) (6.1.1997) by S.I. 1996/3001, **reg. 7(1)**

S. 83 applied (with modifications) (26.11.1997) by S.I. 1997/2560, **reg. 5**

**C60** S. 83 modified (12.6.1997) by S.I. 1997/1331, **reg. 6(1)**

S. 83 modified (12.6.1997) by S.I. 1997/1332, **reg. 6(1)**

S. 83 modified (25.3.1998) by S.I. 1998/389, **reg. 5**

## 84 General duties to achieve and maintain objectives etc.

- (1) It shall be the duty of the Secretary of State and of the [<sup>F189</sup>Agency] to exercise the powers conferred on him or it by or under the water pollution provisions of this Act (other than the preceding provisions of this Chapter and sections 104 and 192 below) [<sup>F190</sup>and by the Environmental Permitting Regulations] in such manner as ensures, so far as it is practicable by the exercise of those powers to do so, that the water quality objectives specified for any waters in—
  - (a) a notice under section 83 above; or
  - (b) a notice under section 30C of the <sup>M22</sup>Control of Pollution Act 1974 (which makes corresponding provision for Scotland),
 are achieved at all times.
- (2) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F189</sup>Agency], for the purposes of the carrying out of its functions under the water pollution provisions of this Act [<sup>F191</sup>or under the Environmental Permitting Regulations] —
  - (a) to monitor the extent of pollution in controlled waters; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to consult, in such cases as it may consider appropriate, with [<sup>F192</sup>the Scottish Environment Protection Agency].

#### Textual Amendments

- F189** Words in s. 84 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F190** Words in s. 84(1) inserted (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(4)(a)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F191** Words in s. 84(2) inserted (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(4)(b)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F192** Words in s. 84(2)(b) substituted (S.) (1.4.1996) by S.I. 1996/973, reg. 2, **Sch. para. 11**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C61** S. 84 amended (27.8.1993) by 1993 c. 12, ss. 40, 51(2), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9** (with s. 46).
- C62** S. 84 modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/2043), reg. 1(b), **Sch. 1**)

#### Marginal Citations

- M22** 1974 c. 40.

## CHAPTER II

### POLLUTION OFFENCES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C63** Pt. III Chapter II (ss. 85-91) amended (1.5.1994) by S.I. 1994/1056, regs. 1(3), 19, **Sch. 4 Pt. I para. 11**

#### *Principal offences*

### <sup>F193</sup>**85 Offences of polluting controlled waters.**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F193** S. 85 repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(a), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

### <sup>F194</sup>**86 Prohibition of certain discharges by notice or regulations.**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F194** S. 86 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(b), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**<sup>F195</sup>87 Discharges into and from public sewers etc.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** S. 87 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(c), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**<sup>F196</sup>88 Defence to principal offences in respect of authorised discharges.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F196** S. 88 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(d), **Sch. 28** (with regs. 1(2), 109(3), Sch. 4)

**<sup>F197</sup>89 Other defences to principal offences.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F197** S. 89 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(e), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

*Offences in connection with deposits and vegetation in rivers*

**<sup>F198</sup>90 Offences in connection with deposits and vegetation in rivers.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F198** S. 90 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(f), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Consents for the purposes of sections 88 to 90*

**<sup>F199</sup>90A Applications for consent under section 89 or 90.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F199** S. 90A repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(g), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**<sup>F200</sup>90B Enforcement notices.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F200** S. 90B repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(h), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

*Appeals in respect of consents under Chapter II*

**<sup>F201</sup>91 Appeals in respect of consents under Chapter II.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** S. 91 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(i), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**[<sup>F202</sup>CHAPTER IIA**

**ABANDONED MINES**

**Textual Amendments**

**F202** Chapter IIA (ss. 91A-91B) inserted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995 for certain purposes and 1.7.1998 otherwise) by [1995 c. 25, s. 58](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); [S.I. 1995/1983, art. 3](#) (with [art. 4](#)); [S.I. 1998/604, art. 3](#)

**<sup>F203</sup>91A Introductory.**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, “abandonment”, in relation to a mine,—
- (a) subject to paragraph (b) below, includes—
    - (i) the discontinuance of any or all of the operations for the removal of water from the mine;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) the cessation of working of any relevant seam, vein or vein-system;
- (iii) the cessation of use of any shaft or outlet of the mine;
- (iv) in the case of a mine in which activities other than mining activities are carried on (whether or not mining activities are also carried on in the mine)—
  - (A) the discontinuance of some or all of those other activities in the mine; and
  - (B) any substantial change in the operations for the removal of water from the mine; but
- (b) does not include—
  - (i) any disclaimer under section 178 or 315 of the <sup>M23</sup>Insolvency Act 1986 (power of liquidator, or trustee of a bankrupt’s estate, to disclaim onerous property) by the official receiver acting in a compulsory capacity; or
  - (ii) the abandonment of any rights, interests or liabilities by the Accountant in Bankruptcy acting as permanent or interim trustee in a sequestration (within the meaning of the <sup>M24</sup>Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985);

and cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly.

- (2) In this Chapter, except where the context otherwise requires—
- “the 1954 Act” means the <sup>M25</sup>Mines and Quarries Act 1954;
  - “acting in a compulsory capacity”, in the case of the official receiver, means acting as—
    - (a) liquidator of a company;
    - (b) receiver or manager of a bankrupt’s estate, pursuant to section 287 of the <sup>M26</sup>Insolvency Act 1986;
    - (c) trustee of a bankrupt’s estate;
    - (d) liquidator of an insolvent partnership;
    - (e) trustee of an insolvent partnership;
    - (f) trustee, or receiver or manager, of the insolvent estate of a deceased person;
  - “mine” has the same meaning as in the 1954 Act;
  - “the official receiver” has the same meaning as it has in the <sup>M27</sup>Insolvency Act 1986 by virtue of section 399(1) of that Act;
  - “prescribed” means prescribed in regulations;
  - “regulations” means regulations made by the Secretary of State;
  - “relevant seam, vein or vein-system”, in the case of any mine, means any seam, vein or vein-system for the purpose of, or in connection with, whose working any excavation constituting or comprised in the mine was made.

#### Textual Amendments

**F203** Chapter IIA (ss. 91A-91B) inserted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995 for certain purposes and 1.7.1998 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 58 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, art. 3 (with art. 4); S.I. 1998/604, art. 3

#### Marginal Citations

**M23** 1986 c. 45.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**M24** 1985 c. 66.

**M25** 1954 c. 70.

**M26** 1986 c. 45.

**M27** 1986 c. 45.

**F204** **91B Mine operators to give the Agency six months' notice of any proposed abandonment.**

- (1) If, in the case of any mine, there is to be an abandonment at any time after the expiration of the initial period, it shall be the duty of the operator of the mine to give notice of the proposed abandonment to the Agency at least six months before the abandonment takes effect.
- (2) A notice under subsection (1) above shall contain such information (if any) as is prescribed for the purpose, which may include information about the operator's opinion as to any consequences of the abandonment.
- (3) A person who fails to give the notice required by subsection (1) above shall be guilty of an offence and liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.
- (4) A person shall not be guilty of an offence under subsection (3) above if—
  - (a) the abandonment happens in an emergency in order to avoid danger to life or health; and
  - (b) notice of the abandonment, containing such information as may be prescribed, is given as soon as reasonably practicable after the abandonment has happened.
- (5) Where the operator of a mine is—
  - (a) the official receiver acting in a compulsory capacity, or
  - (b) the Accountant in Bankruptcy acting as permanent or interim trustee in a sequestration (within the meaning of the <sup>M28</sup>Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985),he shall not be guilty of an offence under subsection (3) above by reason of any failure to give the notice required by subsection (1) above if, as soon as reasonably practicable (whether before or after the abandonment), he gives to the Agency notice of the abandonment or proposed abandonment, containing such information as may be prescribed.
- (6) Where a person gives notice under subsection (1), (4)(b) or (5) above, he shall publish prescribed particulars of, or relating to, the notice in one or more local newspapers circulating in the locality where the mine is situated.
- (7) Where the Agency—
  - (a) receives notice under this section or otherwise learns of an abandonment or proposed abandonment in the case of any mine, and
  - (b) considers that, in consequence of the abandonment or proposed abandonment taking effect, any land has or is likely to become contaminated land, within the meaning of Part IIA of the <sup>M29</sup>Environmental Protection Act 1990,it shall be the duty of the Agency to inform the local authority in whose area that land is situated of the abandonment or proposed abandonment.
- (8) In this section—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“the initial period” means the period of six months beginning with the day on which subsection (1) above comes into force;

“local authority” means—

- (a) any unitary authority;
- (b) any district council, so far as it is not a unitary authority;
- (c) the Common Council of the City of London and, as respects the Temples, the Sub-Treasurer of the Inner Temple and the Under-Treasurer of the Middle Temple respectively;

“unitary authority” means—

- (a) the council of a county, so far as it is the council of an area for which there are no district councils;
- (b) the council of any district comprised in an area for which there is no county council;
- (c) the council of a London borough;
- (d) the council of a county borough in Wales.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F204** Chapter IIA (ss. 91A-91B) inserted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995 for certain purposes and 1.7.1998 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 58 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, art. 3 (with art. 4); S.I. 1998/604, art. 3

#### Marginal Citations

**M28** 1985 c. 66.

**M29** 1990 c. 43.

## CHAPTER III

### POWERS TO PREVENT AND CONTROL POLLUTION

#### 92 Requirements to take precautions against pollution.

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision—
  - (a) for prohibiting a person from having custody or control of any poisonous, noxious or polluting matter unless prescribed works and prescribed precautions and other steps have been carried out or taken for the purpose of preventing or controlling the entry of the matter into any controlled waters;
  - (b) for requiring a person who already has custody or control of, or makes use of, any such matter to carry out such works for that purpose and to take such precautions and other steps for that purpose as may be prescribed.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of the power conferred by subsection (1) above, regulations under that subsection may—
  - (a) confer power on the [<sup>F205</sup>Agency]—
    - (i) to determine for the purposes of the regulations the circumstances in which a person is required to carry out works or to take any precautions or other steps; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) by notice to that person, to impose the requirement and to specify or describe the works, precautions or other steps which that person is required to carry out or take;
  - (b) provide for appeals to the Secretary of State against notices served by the [F205 Agency] in pursuance of provision made by virtue of paragraph (a) above; and
  - (c) provide that a contravention of the regulations shall be an offence the maximum penalties for which shall not exceed the penalties specified in [F206 regulation 39(1) of the Environmental Permitting Regulations] .
- [F207(3) This section is subject to section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals etc).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F205** Words in s. 92 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F206** Words in s. 92(2)(c) substituted (6.4.2010) by **The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010** (S.I. 2010/675), **reg. 1(1)(b)**, **Sch. 26 para. 8(5)** (with **reg. 1(2)**, **Sch. 4**)
- F207** S. 92(3) added (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 144** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C64** S. 92 amended (27.8.1993) by 1993 c. 12, ss. 40, 51(2), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 9** (with s. 46).
- C65** S. 92: power to delegate functions conferred (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, **s. 114(2)(a)(v)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- C66** S. 92 modified by S.I. 2010/675, **Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9** (as substituted (1.10.2011) by **The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011** (S.I. 2011/2043), **reg. 1(b)**, **Sch. 1**)

## 93 Water protection zones.

- [F208(1) Where the appropriate national authority considers that either or both of subsections (2) and (2A) is satisfied in relation to any area, it may by order make provision—
- (a) designating that area as a water protection zone; and
  - (b) regulating the carrying on in that zone of such activities as may be specified or described in the order.]
- [F209(1A) An order under this section may regulate activities carried on in a water protection zone by—
- (a) prohibiting or restricting the carrying on of those activities in the zone; or
  - (b) imposing requirements on persons who carry on those activities in the zone to take such steps as may be specified or described in the order.
- (1B) The power under subsection (1A)(b) is exercisable only for the purpose of enabling the United Kingdom to comply with its obligations under the Water Framework Directive in relation to any applicable environmental objectives.]
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) above this subsection is satisfied in relation to any area if [F210 ... it is appropriate, with a view to preventing or controlling the entry of any poisonous, noxious or polluting matter into controlled waters, to prohibit or restrict

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the carrying on in that area of activities which the [<sup>F211</sup>appropriate national authority] considers are likely to result in the pollution of any such waters.

[<sup>F212</sup>(2A) For the purposes of subsection (1) this subsection is satisfied in relation to any area if it is appropriate, with a view to preventing or limiting any harm that is being or is likely to be caused to controlled waters, to regulate the carrying on in that area of activities which the appropriate national authority considers are likely to result in such harm.

(2B) In subsection (2A) “harm” means any adverse impact on the condition of any hydromorphological quality element affecting the controlled waters that would be likely to prevent the achievement of any environmental objectives applicable to those waters (whether by itself or in combination with other factors), other than an adverse impact caused by the entry into controlled waters of any poisonous, noxious or polluting matter.

(2C) In subsection (2B) “environmental objectives” and “hydromorphological quality element” have the same meaning as in the Water Framework Directive.]

<sup>F213</sup>(3) .....

(4) Without prejudice to the generality of the power conferred by virtue of subsection (1) above, an order under this section may—

[<sup>F214</sup>(a) confer power on the Agency to determine for the purposes of the order—

- (i) the circumstances in which the carrying on of any activities is prohibited or restricted;
- (ii) the circumstances in which any requirement to take steps is imposed on persons who carry on activities;
- (iii) the activities to which any such prohibition or restriction or any such requirement (as the case may be) applies.]

(b) apply a prohibition or restriction in respect of any activities to cases where the activities are carried on without the consent of the [<sup>F215</sup>Agency] or in contravention of any conditions subject to which any such consent is given;

[<sup>F216</sup>(c) provide that a contravention of a prohibition or restriction contained in the order or of a condition of a consent given for the purposes of any such prohibition or restriction or a failure to comply with a requirement to take steps contained in the order shall be an offence;]

(d) provide (subject to any regulations under section 96 below) for anything falling to be determined under the order by the [<sup>F215</sup>Agency] to be determined in accordance with such procedure and by reference to such matters and to the opinion of such persons as may be specified in the order;

(e) make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities; and

(f) contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the [<sup>F217</sup>appropriate national authority] considers appropriate.

[<sup>F218</sup>(4A) The maximum penalties for an offence created by subsection 4(c) shall not exceed—

(a) on summary conviction, a term of imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both); and

(b) on conviction on indictment, imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both).]

[<sup>F219</sup>(5) In this section, “appropriate national authority” means—

(a) in relation to England, the Secretary of State; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in relation to Wales, the Welsh Ministers.
- (6) The power to make an order under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject—
- (a) in the case of an order made by the Secretary of State, to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament; and
  - (b) in the case of an order made by the Welsh Ministers, to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the National Assembly for Wales,
- but neither the Secretary of State nor the Welsh Ministers shall make such an order except on an application made by the Agency in accordance with Schedule 11 to this Act and otherwise in accordance with that Schedule.
- (7) In this section—

“England” includes the territorial sea adjacent to England not forming any part of Wales and “Wales” has the meaning given by section 158(1) of the Government of Wales Act 2006;

“the Water Framework Directive” means Directive [2000/60/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council establishing a framework for Community action in the field of water policy.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F208** S. 93(1) substituted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(2)** (with reg. 7)
- F209** S. 93(1A) inserted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(3)** (with reg. 7)
- F210** Words in s. 93(2) repealed (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(4)(a)** (with reg. 7)
- F211** Words in s. 93(2) substituted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(4)(b)** (with reg. 7)
- F212** S. 93(2A)-(2C) inserted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(5)** (with reg. 7)
- F213** S. 93(3) repealed (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(6)** (with reg. 7)
- F214** S. 93(4)(a) substituted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(7)** (with reg. 7)
- F215** Words in s. 93 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F216** S. 93(4)(c) substituted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(8)** (with reg. 7)
- F217** Words in s. 93(4)(f) substituted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(9)** (with reg. 7)
- F218** S. 93(4A) inserted (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(10)** (with reg. 7)
- F219** S. 93(5)-(7) substituted for s. 93(5) (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), **3(11)** (with reg. 7)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C67** S. 93 extended (01.12.1991) by [Water Consolidation \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1991 \(c. 60, SIF 130\)](#), ss. 2(2), 4(2), **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 4(3)**.
- C68** S. 93 amended (27.8.1993) by 1993 c. 12, ss. 40, 51(2), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9** (with s. 46).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**C69** S. 93 modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

**F220 94 Nitrate sensitive areas.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F220** S. 94 repealed (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), 4 (with reg. 7)

**F221 95 Agreements in nitrate sensitive areas.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F221** S. 95 repealed (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), 4 (with reg. 7)

**96 Regulations with respect to consents required by virtue of section 93 or 94.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may, for the purposes of any orders under section 93 above which require the consent of the [<sup>F222</sup>Agency] to the carrying on of any activities, by regulations make provision with respect to—
  - (a) applications for any such consent;
  - (b) the conditions of any such consent;
  - (c) the revocation or variation of any such consent;
  - (d) appeals against determinations on any such application;
  - (e) the exercise by the Secretary of State of any power conferred on the [<sup>F222</sup>Agency] by the orders;
  - (f) the imposition of charges where such an application has been made, such a consent has been given or anything has been done in pursuance of any such consent; and
  - (g) the registration of any such application or consent.

<sup>F223</sup>(2) .....

<sup>F224</sup>(3) .....

[<sup>F225</sup>(4) This section is subject to section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals etc).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F222** Words in s. 96 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120\(1\), Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#) (with [art. 4](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F223** S. 96(2) repealed (22.12.2009) by [Water Resources Act 1991 \(Amendment\) \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/3104\)](#), regs. 1(c), 4 (with reg. 7)
- F224** S. 96(3) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(j), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F225** S. 96(4) added (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 145** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C70** S. 96: power to delegate functions conferred (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, **s. 114(2)(a)(v)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**97 Codes of good agricultural practice.**

- (1) The Ministers may by order made by statutory instrument approve any code of practice issued (whether by either or both of the Ministers or by another person) for the purpose of—
- (a) giving practical guidance to persons engaged in agriculture with respect to activities that may affect controlled waters; and
  - (b) promoting what appear to them to be desirable practices by such persons for avoiding or minimising the pollution of any such waters,
- and may at any time by such an order approve a modification of such a code or withdraw their approval of such a code or modification.
- (2) A contravention of a code of practice as for the time being approved under this section shall not of itself give rise to any criminal or civil liability, but the [<sup>F226</sup>Agency] shall take into account whether there has been or is likely to be any such contravention in determining when and how it should exercise—
- [<sup>F227</sup>(a) its relevant functions, in relation to water discharge activities, under the Environmental Permitting Regulations;]
  - (b) any powers conferred on the [<sup>F226</sup>Agency] by regulations under section 92 above.
- (3) The Ministers shall not make an order under this section unless they have first consulted the [<sup>F226</sup>Agency].

**Textual Amendments**

- F226** Words in s. 97 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F227** S. 97(2)(a) substituted (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(6)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER IV

### SUPPLEMENTAL PROVISIONS WITH RESPECT TO WATER POLLUTIONS

#### 98 Radioactive substances.

- (1) Except as provided by regulations made by the Secretary of State under this section, nothing in this Part shall apply in relation to radioactive waste within the meaning of [<sup>F228</sup>the Environmental Permitting Regulations].
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
- (a) provide for prescribed provisions of this Part to have effect with such modifications as he considers appropriate for dealing with such waste;
  - (b) make such modifications of [<sup>F229</sup>the Environmental Permitting Regulations] or, in relation to such waste, of any other enactment as he considers appropriate in consequence of the provisions of this Part and of any regulations made by virtue of paragraph (a) above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F228** Words in s. 98(1) substituted (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(7)(a)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**F229** Words in s. 98(2) substituted (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(7)(b)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

#### <sup>F230</sup>99 Consents required by the Agency.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F230** S. 99 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(k), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

#### 100 Civil liability in respect of pollution and savings.

Except in so far as this Part expressly otherwise provides and subject to the provisions of section 18 of the <sup>M30</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 (which relates to offences under two or more laws), nothing in this Part—

- (a) confers a right of action in any civil proceedings (other than proceedings for the recovery of a fine) in respect of any contravention of this Part or any subordinate legislation, consent or other instrument made, given or issued under this Part;
- (b) derogates from any right of action or other remedy (whether civil or criminal) in proceedings instituted otherwise than under this Part; or
- (c) affects any restriction imposed by or under any other enactment, whether public, local or private.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Marginal Citations**

**M30** 1978 c. 30.

**101 Limitation for summary offences under Part III.**

Notwithstanding anything in section 127 of the <sup>M31</sup>Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (time limit for summary proceedings), a magistrates’ court may try any summary offence under this Part, or under any subordinate legislation made under this Part, if the information is laid not more than twelve months after the commission of the offence.

**Marginal Citations**

**M31** 1980 c. 43.

**102 Power to give effect to international obligations.**

The Secretary of State shall have power by regulations to provide that the water pollution provisions of this Act shall have effect with such modifications as may be prescribed for the purpose of enabling Her Majesty’s Government in the United Kingdom to give effect—

- (a) to any [<sup>F231</sup>EU] obligations; or
- (b) to any international agreement to which the United Kingdom is for the time being a party.

**Textual Amendments**

**F231** Words in Act substituted (22.4.2011) by [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011](#) (S.I. 2011/1043), arts. 2, 3, 6 (with art. 3(2)(3), 4(2), 6(4)(5))

<sup>F232</sup>**103 Transitional pollution provisions.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F232** S. 103 repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(l), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**104 Meaning of “controlled waters” etc. in Part III.**

(1) References in this Part to controlled waters are references to waters of any of the following classes—

- (a) relevant territorial waters, that is to say, subject to subsection (4) below, the waters which extend seaward for three miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea adjacent to England and Wales is measured;
- (b) coastal waters, that is to say, any waters which are within the area which extends landward from those baselines as far as—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the limit of the highest tide; or
  - (b) in the case of the waters of any relevant river or watercourse, the fresh-water limit of the river or watercourse,  
together with the waters of any enclosed dock which adjoins waters within that area;
  - (c) inland freshwaters, that is to say, the waters of any relevant lake or pond or of so much of any relevant river or watercourse as is above the fresh-water limit;
  - (d) ground waters, that is to say, any waters contained in underground strata;
- and, accordingly, in this Part “coastal waters”, “controlled waters”, “ground waters”, “inland freshwaters” and “relevant territorial waters” have the meanings given by this subsection.
- (2) In this Part any reference to the waters of any lake or pond or of any river or watercourse includes a reference to the bottom, channel or bed of any lake, pond, river or, as the case may be, watercourse which is for the time being dry.
- (3) In this section—
- “fresh-water limit”, in relation to any river or watercourse, means the place for the time being shown as the fresh-water limit of that river or watercourse in the latest map deposited for that river or watercourse under section 192 below;
  - “miles” means international nautical miles of 1,852 metres;
  - “lake or pond” includes a reservoir of any description;
  - “relevant lake or pond” means (subject to subsection (4) below) any lake or pond which (whether it is natural or artificial or above or below ground) discharges into a relevant river or watercourse or into another lake or pond which is itself a relevant lake or pond;
  - “relevant river or watercourse” means (subject to subsection (4) below) any river or watercourse (including an underground river or watercourse and an artificial river or watercourse) which is neither a public sewer nor a sewer or drain which drains into a public sewer.
- (4) The Secretary of State may by order provide—
- (a) that any area of the territorial sea adjacent to England and Wales is to be treated as if it were an area of relevant territorial waters for the purposes of this Part and of any other enactment in which any expression is defined by reference to the meanings given by this section;
  - (b) that any lake or pond which does not discharge into a relevant river or watercourse or into a relevant lake or pond is to be treated for those purposes as a relevant lake or pond;
  - (c) that a lake or pond which does so discharge and is of a description specified in the order is to be treated for those purposes as if it were not a relevant lake or pond;
  - (d) that a watercourse of a description so specified is to be treated for those purposes as if it were not a relevant river or watercourse.
- (5) An order under this section may—
- (a) contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate; and
  - (b) make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The power of the Secretary of State to make an order under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C71** S. 104 definition of "controlled waters" applied by [London Docklands Railway Act 1991 \(c. xxiii\)](#), s. [7\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- C72** S. 104(1) modified (12.6.1997) by [S.I. 1997/1331](#), [reg. 6\(2\)](#)  
S. 104(1) modified (12.6.1997) by [S.I. 1997/1332](#), [reg. 6\(2\)](#)
- C73** S. 104(1) modified (1.6.2003 for E.) by [Bathing Waters \(Classification\) \(England\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1238\)](#), [regs. 1, 2\(1\)](#)
- C74** S. 104(1)(c) applied (with modifications) (6.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/3001](#), [reg. 7\(2\)](#)

## PART IV

### FLOOD DEFENCE

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C75** Pt. IV (ss. 105-113): functions transferred to the Environment Agency (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. [2\(1\)\(a\)\(iii\)](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), [115](#), [117](#)); [S.I. 1996/186](#), [art. 3](#) (with [art. 4](#))

#### General

### 105 General functions with respect to flood defence.

<sup>F233</sup>(1) . . . . .

- (2) For the purpose of carrying out its flood defence functions the [<sup>F234</sup>Agency] shall from time to time carry out surveys of the areas in relation to which it carries out those functions.
- (3) In the exercise of the powers conferred by the following provisions of this Part and the other flood defence provisions of this Act due regard shall be had to the interests of fisheries, including sea fisheries.
- (4) Nothing in the following provisions of this Part or the other flood defence provisions of this Act shall prejudice or affect the provisions of Part V of this Act or the <sup>M32</sup>Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975 or any right, power or duty conferred or imposed by that Part or that Act.

#### Textual Amendments

- F233** S. 105(1) repealed (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. [120\(1\)\(3\)](#), [Sch. 22 para. 146](#), [Sch. 24](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), [115](#), [117](#)); [S.I. 1996/186](#), [art. 3](#)
- F234** Word in s. 105 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. [120\(1\)](#), [Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), [115](#), [117](#)); [S.I. 1996/186](#), [art. 3](#) (with [art. 4](#))



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C76** S. 105 excluded (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, ss. 19, 120(2), Sch. 5 Pt. II para. 13(2), **Sch. 23 Pt. II para. 23** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**Marginal Citations**

**M32** 1975 c. 51.

<sup>F235</sup>**106 Obligation to carry out flood defence functions through committees.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F235** S. 106 repealed (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 41** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C77** S. 106 excluded (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, ss. 19, 120(2), Sch. 5 Pt. II para. 13(2), **Sch. 23 Pt. II para. 23** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Main river functions*

**107 Main river functions under the Land Drainage Act 1991.**

- (1) This section has effect for conferring functions in relation to main rivers on the [<sup>F236</sup>Agency] which are functions of drainage boards in relation to other watercourses.
- (2) Notwithstanding subsection (3) of section 21 of the Land Drainage Act 1991 (power to secure compliance with drainage obligations), the powers of the [<sup>F236</sup>Agency] in relation to a main river shall, by virtue of this section, include the powers which under that section are exercisable otherwise than in relation to a main river by the drainage board concerned; and the provisions of that section shall have effect accordingly.
- (3) The powers of the [<sup>F236</sup>Agency] in relation to a main river shall, by virtue of this section, include the powers which under section 25 of the Land Drainage Act 1991 (powers for securing the maintenance of flow of watercourses) are exercisable in relation to an ordinary watercourse by the drainage board concerned; and the provisions of that section and section 27 of that Act shall have effect accordingly.
- (4) Sections 33 and 34 of the Land Drainage Act 1991 (commutation of obligations) shall have effect where—
  - (a) any person is under an obligation imposed on him by reason of tenure, custom, prescription or otherwise to do any work in connection with the drainage of land (whether by way of repairing banks or walls, maintaining watercourses or otherwise); and
  - (b) that work is in connection with a main river,
 as they have effect in relation to an obligation to do work otherwise than in connection with a main river but as if the [<sup>F236</sup>Agency] were under a duty to take steps to commute the obligation and the references in those sections to the drainage board for the internal drainage district where the works fall to be done were omitted.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In this section—
- (a) references to the exercise of a power in relation to a main river shall include a reference to its exercise in connection with a main river or in relation to the banks of such a river or any drainage works in connection with such a river; and
  - (b) expressions used both in this section and in a provision applied by this section have the same meanings in this section as in that provision.
- (6) The functions of the [F236Agency] by virtue of this section are in addition to the functions of the [F236Agency] which by virtue of the provisions of the M33Land Drainage Act 1991 are exercisable by the [F236Agency] concurrently with an internal drainage board.

#### Textual Amendments

**F236** Words in s. 107 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), Sch. 22 para. 128 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3 (with art. 4)

#### Marginal Citations

**M33** 1991 c. 59.

### 108 Schemes for transfer to the [F237Agency] of functions in relation to main river.

- (1) The [F237Agency] may at any time prepare and submit to either of the Ministers for confirmation a scheme making provision for the transfer to the [F237Agency] from any drainage body of—
- (a) all rights, powers, duties, obligations and liabilities (including liabilities incurred in connection with works) over or in connection with a main river; and
  - (b) any property held by the drainage body for the purpose of, or in connection with, any functions so transferred;
- and the [F237Agency] shall prepare such a scheme and submit it to one of the Ministers if it is directed to do so by that Minister.
- (2) A scheme prepared and submitted under subsection (1) above may make provisions for any matter supplemental to or consequential on the transfers for which the scheme provides.
- (3) The Minister to whom a scheme is submitted under this section may by order made by statutory instrument confirm that scheme; and Schedule 14 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the procedure to be followed in connection with the making of such an order and with respect to challenges to such orders.
- (4) An order under this section may contain provisions with respect to the persons by whom all or any of the expenses incurred by the Ministers or other persons in connection with the making or confirmation of the order, or with the making of the scheme confirmed by the order, are to be borne.
- (5) Where, under a scheme made by the [F237Agency] under this section, liabilities incurred in connection with drainage works are transferred to the [F237Agency] from a local authority, the [F237Agency] may require the local authority to make contributions to the [F237Agency] towards the discharge of the liabilities.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) If the amount to be paid by a local authority by way of contributions required under subsection (5) above is not agreed between the [<sup>F237</sup>Agency] and the local authority, it shall be referred to the arbitration of a single arbitrator appointed—
- (a) by agreement between them; or
  - (b) in default of agreement, by the Ministers.
- (7) The relevant Minister shall by regulations provide for the payment, subject to such exceptions or conditions as may be specified in the regulations, of compensation by the [<sup>F237</sup>Agency] to any officer or other employee of a drainage body who suffers loss of employment or loss or diminution of emoluments which is attributable to a scheme under this section or anything done in pursuance of such a scheme.
- (8) Regulations under subsection (7) above may include provision—
- (a) as to the manner in which and the persons to whom any claim for compensation by virtue of the regulations is to be made; and
  - (b) for the determination of all questions arising under the regulations.
- (9) In this section—
- “drainage body” means an internal drainage board or any other body having power to make or maintain works for the drainage of land;
- “the relevant Minister”—
- (a) in relation to employees of a drainage body wholly in Wales, means the Secretary of State;
  - (b) in relation to employees of a drainage body partly in Wales, means the Ministers; and
  - (c) in any other case, means the Minister.

#### Textual Amendments

**F237** Words in s. 108 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

### 109 Structures in, over or under a main river.

- (1) No person shall erect any structure in, over or under a watercourse which is part of a main river except with the consent of and in accordance with plans and sections approved by the [<sup>F238</sup>Agency].
- (2) No person shall, without the consent of the [<sup>F238</sup>Agency], carry out any work of alteration or repair on any structure in, over or under a watercourse which is part of a main river if the work is likely to affect the flow of water in the watercourse or to impede any drainage work.
- (3) No person shall erect or alter any structure designed to contain or divert the floodwaters of any part of a main river except with the consent of and in accordance with plans and sections approved by the [<sup>F238</sup>Agency].
- (4) If any person carries out any work in contravention of this section the [<sup>F238</sup>Agency] may—
  - (a) remove, alter, or pull down the work; and
  - (b) recover from that person the expenses incurred in doing so.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Subsections (1) and (2) above shall not apply to any work carried out in an emergency; but a person carrying out any work excepted from those subsections by this subsection shall inform the [<sup>F238</sup>Agency] in writing as soon as practicable—
- (a) of the carrying out of the work; and
  - (b) of the circumstances in which it was carried out.
- (6) Nothing in this section shall be taken to affect any enactment requiring the consent of any government department for the erection of a bridge or any powers exercisable by any government department in relation to a bridge.
- [<sup>F239</sup>(7) Subsections (1) to (3) above shall not apply to any work if—
- (a) carrying out the work is a licensable marine activity,
  - (b) the Agency considers that, in view of the terms and conditions that will be included in the marine licence, the provisions of those subsections may be dispensed with, and
  - (c) the Agency issues a notice to that effect to the applicant for the marine licence.
- (8) In subsection (7) above “licensable marine activity” and “marine licence” have the same meaning as in Part 4 of the Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F238** Words in s. 109 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**F239** S. 109(7)(8) inserted (6.4.2011) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), **ss. 82(2)**, 324(3) (with ss. 76-81, 111, **Sch. 9 para. 10**); S.I. 2011/556, art. 3(2)(a)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C78** S. 109 modified (16.3.1992) by London Government Act 1992 (c. iii), **s. 32(9)(10)**

S. 109 modified (18.12.1996) by 1996 c. 61, s. 52, **Sch. 15 Pt. III para. 11**

**C79** S. 109 amended (16.3.1992) by Aire and Calder Navigation Act 1992 (c. iv), **s. 33(12)**

**C80** S. 109 amended (18.6.1992) by British Railways (No. 2) Act 1992 (c. xi), **s. 42(8)**

**C81** S. 109 amended (16.3.1992) by Midland Metro Act 1992 (c. vii), **s. 21(9)**

**C82** S. 109 excluded (5.11.1993) by 1993 c. 42, **s. 25(1)** (with s. 30(1), **Sch. 2 para. 9**).

**C83** S. 109 applied (21.7.1994) by 1994 c. xv, **s. 43(11)**

**C84** S. 109 applied (with modifications) (7.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/519, **arts. 3(9)**, 57-64

**C85** S. 109 excluded (2.4.2004) by Docklands Light Railway (Woolwich Arsenal Extension) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/757), arts. 1, **4(8)(b)**

**C86** S. 109 excluded (11.2.2005) by Merseytram (Liverpool City Centre to Kirkby) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/120), arts. 1, **5(9)** (with arts. 65, 66)

**C87** S. 109 modified (22.3.2005) by Midland Metro (Wednesbury to Brierley Hill and Miscellaneous Amendments) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/927), **Sch. 11 para. 11** (with art. 51)

**C88** S. 109 modified (26.8.2005) by River Tyne (Tunnels) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/2222), art. 1, **Sch. 10 para. 14** (with arts. 45(1), 48, **Sch. 10 paras. 21, 29**)

**C89** S. 109 excluded (25.11.2005) by Docklands Light Railway (Capacity Enhancement) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/3105), arts. 1, **5(7)(a)** (with arts. 3(5), 15(3))

**C90** S. 109 modified (11.1.2006) by The Cambridgeshire Guided Busway Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/3523), art. 1, **Sch. 11 para. 10** (with art. 52)

**C91** S. 109 excluded (22.11.2006) by Docklands Light Railway (Stratford International Extension) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2905), arts. 1, **4(8)** (with art. 43)

**C92** S. 109 modified (19.3.2007) by Ouseburn Barrage Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/608), art. 1, **Sch. 6 para. 18** (with arts. 46-48, **Sch. 6 paras. 17(5), 23**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- C93** S. 109 excluded (23.8.2007) by Docklands Light Railway (Capacity Enhancement and 2012 Games Preparation) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/2297), arts. 1, **5(8)(a)** (with arts. 3(6), 12(3))
- C94** S. 109 modified (28.9.2007) by London Gateway Logistics and Commercial Centre Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/2657), art. 1, **Sch. 3 para. 13(1)** (with arts. 19, 28, Sch. 3 para. 13(2))
- C95** S. 109 modified (16.5.2008) by London Gateway Port Harbour Empowerment Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/1261), art. 1, **Sch. 10 para. 12(1)** (with arts. 41(1), 45, 54(2), 55, 56, 57, 58(6))
- C96** S. 109 modified (22.7.2008) by Crossrail Act 2008 (c. 18), **Sch. 17 para. 11**
- C97** S. 109 excluded (9.6.2009) by Nottingham Express Transit System Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1300), arts. 1, **5(9)** (with Sch. 13 para. 14(2), Sch. 14 para. 19, Sch. 16)
- C98** S. 109 modified (20.7.2010) by The Network Rail (Nuneaton North Chord) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1721), art. 1, **Sch. 11 para. 12**
- C99** S. 109 modified (27.8.2010) by The Llangollen and Corwen Railway Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/2136), art. 1(1), **Sch. 4 para. 12**
- C100** S. 109 modified (1.9.2010) by The Port of Bristol (Deep Sea Container Terminal) Harbour Revision Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/2020), art. 1(2), **Sch. 6 para. 11(1)** (with arts. 18, 19)
- C101** S. 109 modified (1.2.2011) by The River Mersey (Mersey Gateway Bridge) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/41), art. 1, **Sch. 10 para. 41(1)** (with art. 51, Sch. 10 paras. 6885)

## 110 Applications for consents and approvals under section 109.

- (1) The [<sup>F240</sup>Agency] may require the payment of an application fee by a person who applies to it for its consent under section 109 above; and the amount of that fee shall be £50 or such other sum as may be [<sup>F241</sup>prescribed].
- (2) A consent or approval required under section 109 above—
  - (a) shall not be unreasonably withheld;
  - (b) shall be deemed to have been given if it is neither given nor refused within the relevant period; and
  - (c) in the case of a consent, may be given subject to any reasonable condition as to the time at which and the manner in which any work is to be carried out.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b) above the relevant period is—
  - (a) in the case of a consent, the period of two months after whichever is the later of—
    - (i) the day on which application for the consent is made; and
    - (ii) if at the time when that application is made an application fee is required to be paid, the day on which the liability to pay that fee is discharged;
 and
  - (b) in the case of an approval, the period of two months after application for the approval is made.
- (4) If any question arises under this section whether any consent or approval is unreasonably withheld or whether any condition imposed is reasonable, the question shall—
  - (a) if the parties agree to arbitration, be referred to a single arbitrator appointed by agreement between the parties or, in default of agreement, by the President of the Institution of Civil Engineers; and
  - (b) if the parties do not agree to arbitration, be referred to and determined by [<sup>F242</sup>the Minister] or the Secretary of State, according to whether the determination falls to be made in relation to England or Wales.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(5) The power of the Ministers to make an order under subsection (1) above shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

[<sup>F243</sup>(6) In subsection (1) above “prescribed” means specified in, or determined in accordance with, an order made by the Ministers; and any such order may make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F240** Word in s. 110 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F241** Word in s. 110(1) substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 147(1)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**
- F242** Words in s. 110(4)(b) substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 147(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**
- F243** S. 110(6) inserted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 147(3)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**

#### *Arrangements with certain authorities*

### 111 Arrangements with navigation and conservancy authorities.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency], with a view to improving the drainage of any land, may enter into an arrangement with a navigation authority or conservancy authority for any of the following purposes, that is to say—
- (a) the transfer to the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency] of—
    - (i) the whole or any part of the undertaking of the navigation authority or conservancy authority or of any of the rights, powers, duties, liabilities and obligations of that authority; or
    - (ii) any property vested in that authority as such;
  - (b) the alteration or improvement by the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency] of any of the works of the navigation authority or conservancy authority;
  - (c) the making of payments by the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency] to the navigation authority or conservancy authority or by that authority to the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency] in respect of any matter for which provision is made by the arrangement.
- (2) The exercise by the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency] of its power to enter into an arrangement under this section shall require the approval of the Ministers.
- (3) Where the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency] is intending to enter into an arrangement under this section it shall publish a notice of its intention in such manner as may be directed by either of the Ministers.
- (4) Where an arrangement has been made under this section, the [<sup>F244</sup>Agency] shall cause a notice under subsection (5) below to be published in the London Gazette in such form as may be prescribed by regulations made by one of the Ministers.
- (5) A notice under this subsection is a notice—
- (a) stating that the arrangement has been made; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) specifying the place at which a copy of the arrangement may be inspected by persons interested.

#### Textual Amendments

**F244** Words in s. 111 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

### *Supplemental*

#### 112 Flood defence regulations.

The Ministers shall each have power by regulations to make provision generally for the purpose of carrying into effect the provisions of this Part and the other flood defence provisions of this Act.

#### 113 Interpretation of Part IV.

(1) In this Part—

“banks” means banks, walls or embankments adjoining or confining, or constructed for the purposes of or in connection with, any channel or sea front, and includes all land and water between the bank and low-watermark;

“drainage” includes—

- (a) defence against water, including sea water;
- (b) irrigation other than spray irrigation, <sup>F245</sup> . . .
- (c) warping; [<sup>F246</sup> and
- (d) the carrying on, for any purpose, of any other practice which involves management of the level of water in a watercourse;]

“flood defence” means the drainage of land and the provision of flood warning systems;

“main river” (subject to section 137(4) below) means a watercourse shown as such on a main river map and includes any structure or appliance for controlling or regulating the flow of water into, in or out of the channel which—

- (a) is a structure or appliance situated in the channel or in any part of the banks of the channel; and
- (b) is not a structure or appliance vested in or controlled by an internal drainage board;

“watercourse” shall be construed as if for the words from “except” onwards in the definition in section 221(1) below there were substituted the words “except a public sewer”.

(2) If any question arises under this Part—

- (a) whether any work is a drainage work in connection with a main river; or
  - (b) whether any proposed work will, if constructed, be such a drainage work,
- the question shall be referred to one of the Ministers for decision or, if either of the parties so requires, to arbitration.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Where any question is required under subsection (2) above to be referred to arbitration it shall be referred to the arbitration of a single arbitrator appointed—
- (a) by agreement between the parties; or
  - (b) in default of agreement, by the President of the Institution of Civil Engineers, on the application of either party.
- (4) Nothing in this Part shall affect the powers exercisable by the [<sup>F247</sup>Agency] under any local Act, as they existed immediately before the coming into force of this Act.

**Textual Amendments**

- F245** Word in definition in s. 113(1) repealed (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(3), **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F246** Words in definition in s. 113(1) added (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 100(1) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**
- F247** Word in s. 113(4) substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C102** S. 113 definitions of "main river" and "banks" applied by [London Docklands Railway Act 1991](#) (c. xxiii), s. 7(2)(b)

**PART V**

**GENERAL CONTROL OF FISHERIES**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C103** [Pt. V](#) (ss. 114-116): certain functions transferred to the Environment Agency (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 2(1)(a)(v) (with ss. 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

<sup>F248</sup>**114** .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F248** S. 114 repealed (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1) (3), **Sch. 22 para. 148**, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**115 Fisheries orders.**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, each of the Ministers shall have power, on an application made to him by the [<sup>F249</sup>Agency], by order made by statutory instrument to make provision in relation to an area defined by the order for the modification, in relation to the fisheries in that area—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) of any provisions of the <sup>M34</sup>Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975 [<sup>F250</sup>(as amended by the Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009) ] relating to the regulation of fisheries;
- [<sup>F251</sup>(b) of section 142 or 156 below or paragraph 6 or 7 of Schedule 25 to this Act [<sup>F252</sup> (as so amended) ] ; or]
- (c) of any provisions of a local Act relating to any fishery in that area.
- (2) An order under this section—
- (a) may contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision, including provision for the payment of compensation to persons injuriously affected by the order, as may appear to be necessary or expedient in connection with the other provisions of the order; but
- (b) shall not apply to any waters in respect of which either of the Ministers has granted a licence under section 29 of the Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975 (fish rearing licences).
- (3) Before either of the Ministers makes an order under this section he shall—
- (a) send to the [<sup>F249</sup>Agency] a copy of the draft order; and
- (b) notify the [<sup>F249</sup>Agency] of the time within which, and the manner in which, objections to the draft order may be made to him.
- (4) Neither of the Ministers shall make an order under this section unless the [<sup>F249</sup>Agency] has caused notice of—
- (a) that Minister’s intention to make the order;
- (b) the place where copies of the draft order may be inspected and obtained; and
- (c) the matters notified under subsection (3)(b) above,
- to be published in the London Gazette and, if it is directed to do so by one of the Ministers, in such other manner as that Minister thinks best adapted for informing persons affected.
- (5) Before either of the Ministers makes an order under this section he—
- (a) shall consider any objection which may be duly made to the draft order; and
- (b) may cause a public local inquiry to be held with respect to any such objections.
- (6) A statutory instrument containing an order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament; and, where a statutory instrument is laid before Parliament for the purposes of this paragraph, a copy of the report of any local inquiry held with respect to objections considered in connection with the making of the order contained in that instrument shall be so laid at the same time.
- (7) Where—
- (a) any fishery, land or foreshore proposed to be comprised in an order under this section [<sup>F253</sup>making provision, by virtue of subsection (1)(b) above, for the modification of section 156 below in relation to fisheries in an area]; or
- (b) any fishery proposed to be affected by any such order; or
- (c) any land over which it is proposed to acquire an easement under any such order,
- belongs to Her Majesty in right of the Crown or forms part of the possessions of the Duchy of Lancaster or the Duchy of Cornwall or belongs to, or is under the management of, any government department, the order may be made by one of the Ministers only if he has previously obtained the consent of the appropriate authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) In subsection (7) above “the appropriate authority”—
- (a) in the case of any foreshore under the management of the Crown Estate Commissioners or of any fishery or land belonging to Her Majesty in right of the Crown, means those Commissioners;
  - (b) in the case of any foreshore, fishery or land forming part of the possessions of the Duchy of Lancaster, means the Chancellor of the Duchy;
  - (c) in the case of any foreshore, fishery or land forming part of the possessions of the Duchy of Cornwall, means the Duke of Cornwall or the persons for the time being empowered to dispose for any purpose of the land of the Duchy;
  - (d) in the case of any foreshore, fishery or land which belongs to or is under the management of a government department, means that government department.
- (9) In this section “foreshore” includes the shore and bed of the sea and of every channel, creek, bay, estuary and navigable river as far as the tide flows.

#### Textual Amendments

- F249** Words in s. 115 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F250** Words in s. 115(1)(a) inserted (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), s. 324(3), **Sch. 16 para. 21(a)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. para. 15(i)
- F251** S. 115(1)(b) substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 105, **Sch. 15 para. 25** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F252** Words in s. 115(1)(b) inserted (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), s. 324(3), **Sch. 16 para. 21(b)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. para. 15(i)
- F253** Words in s. 115(7)(a) inserted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 116, **Sch. 21 Pt. I para. 2(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C104** S. 115 excluded by S.I. 1999/1746, **arts. 1(1), 4(1)** (with art. 2) (the exclusion coming into force immediately before the principal appointed day (1.7.1999 appointed by S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**))

#### Marginal Citations

- M34** 1975 c. 51.

## 116 Power to give effect to international obligations.

[<sup>F254</sup>(1)] Each of the Ministers shall have power by regulations to provide that the provisions of this Part or of any other enactment relating to the carrying out by the [<sup>F255</sup>Agency] of such of its functions as relate to fisheries shall have effect with such modifications as may be prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of enabling Her Majesty’s Government in the United Kingdom to give effect—

- (a) to any [<sup>F231</sup>EU] obligations; or
- (b) to any international agreement to which the United Kingdom is for the time being a party.

[<sup>F256</sup>(2) In subsection (1), the reference to functions includes any functions conferred on the Agency by virtue of the Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F231** Words in Act substituted (22.4.2011) by [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), arts. 2, 3, 6 (with art. 3(2)(3), 4(2), 6(4)(5))
- F254** S. 116(1): s. 116 renumbered as s. 116(1) (12.1.2010) by [Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 \(c. 23\)](#), s. 324(3), [Sch. 16 para. 22\(a\)](#); S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. para. 15(i)
- F255** Words in s. 116 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), [Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#) (with art. 4)
- F256** S. 116(2) inserted (12.1.2010) by [Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 \(c. 23\)](#), s. 324(3), [Sch. 16 para. 22\(b\)](#); S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. para. 15(i)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C105** S. 116 excluded by S.I. 1999/1746, [arts. 1\(1\)](#), 4(1) (with [art. 2](#)) (the exclusion coming into force immediately before the principal appointed day (1.7.1999 appointed by S.I. 1998/3178, [art. 3](#)))

## PART VI

### FINANCIAL PROVISIONS IN RELATION TO THE [F257 AGENCY]

#### Textual Amendments

- F257** Word in the heading to Pt. VI substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, [Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#)

## CHAPTER I

### GENERAL FINANCIAL PROVISIONS

**F258** 117 .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F258** S. 117 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), [Sch. 22 para. 149](#), [Sch. 24](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#)

#### 118 Special duties with respect to flood defence revenue.

- (1) Revenue raised by the [F259 Agency] as mentioned in subsection (2) below—
- (a) shall, except for any amount falling within subsection (3) below, be spent only in the carrying out of the [F259 Agency's] [F260 flood and coastal erosion risk management functions, within the meaning of Part 1 of the Flood and Water Management Act 2010,] in or for the benefit of the [F261 flood risk management region] in which it is raised; and
  - (b) shall be disregarded in determining the amount of any surplus for the purposes of [F262 section 44(4) of the 1995 Act].

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The revenue referred to in subsection (1) above is revenue raised by the [F259 Agency] in a [F263 flood risk management region] —
- (a) by virtue of any regulations under section 74 of the M35 Local Government Finance Act 1988 (power to issue levies);
  - (b) by general drainage charges under sections 134 [F264 and 135] below;
  - (c) by special drainage charges under sections 137 and 138 below; or
  - (d) by contributions required under section 139(1) below.
- (3) An amount falls within this subsection if it is an amount which the [F259 Agency] considers it appropriate—
- (a) to set aside towards research or related activities or towards meeting the [F259 Agency’s] administrative expenses; F265 ...
  - F265 (b) .....
- (4) Any amount specified in a resolution under section 58(1)(b) of the M36 Land Drainage Act 1991 in relation to any [F266 flood risk management region] (allocation of revenue in lieu of contributions) shall be treated for the purposes of this section as if it were revenue actually raised by contributions required under section 139(1) below.
- (5) For the purposes of this section, the following sums, that is to say—
- (a) any sums held by the [F259 Agency] by virtue of any transfer of property, rights or liabilities from a water [F259 agency] in accordance with a scheme under Schedule 2 to the M37 Water Act 1989, in so far as those sums represent amounts which the water [F259 Agency] was required by virtue of paragraph 31 of Schedule 3 to the M38 Water Act 1973 to spend only in the discharge of their land drainage functions in or for the benefit of a particular local land drainage district; and
  - (b) any sums raised by the [F259 Agency] in a [F267 flood risk management region] by virtue of a precept issued under section 46 of the M39 Land Drainage Act 1976,
- shall be treated as revenue raised by the [F259 Agency] as mentioned in subsection (2) above in the corresponding [F268 flood risk management region] or, as the case may be, in that local flood defence district.
- F269 (6) .....
- [F270 (7) In this section “flood risk management region” means the region of a Regional Flood and Coastal Committee, within the meaning of section 22 of the Flood and Water Management Act 2010.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F259** Words in s. 118 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F260** Words in s. 118(1) substituted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(2)(a)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F261** Words in s. 118(1) substituted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(2)(b)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F262** Words in s. 118(1)(b) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22**, para. 150(2) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F263** Words in s. 118(2) substituted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(3)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F264** Words in s. 118(2)(b) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22**, para. 150(3) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F265** S. 118(3)(b) and word omitted (1.4.2011) by virtue of Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(4)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F266** Words in s. 118(4) substituted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(5)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F267** Words in s. 118(5) substituted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(6)(a)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F268** Words in s. 118(5) substituted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(6)(b)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F269** S. 118(6) omitted (1.4.2011) by virtue of Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(7)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F270** S. 118(7) added (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 43(8)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C106** S. 118 restricted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), **ss. 23(4)**, 49(3) (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(c)

#### Marginal Citations

- M35** 1988 c. 41.  
**M36** 1991 c. 59.  
**M37** 1989 c. 15.  
**M38** 1973 c. 37.  
**M39** 1976 c. 70.

### <sup>F271</sup>**119 Duties with respect to certain funds raised under local enactments.**

(1) Where the Agency holds any funds, or any interest in any funds, which immediately before the transfer date the National Rivers Authority, by virtue of this subsection as originally enacted, was not permitted to use except for particular purposes, those funds or that interest shall not be used except for the purposes for which they could be used by virtue of this subsection as originally enacted.

(1A) For the purposes of subsection (1) above, “the transfer date” has the same meaning as in Part I of the 1995 Act.]

(2) Any funds to which subsection (1) above applies shall be disregarded in determining the amount of any surplus under [<sup>F272</sup>section 44(3) of the 1995 Act].

#### Textual Amendments

- F271** S. 119 (1)(1A) substituted (1.4.1996) for s. 119(1) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 151(1)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F272** Words in s. 119(2) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 151(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### **120 Contributions between the [<sup>F273</sup>Agency] and certain other authorities.**

(1) Where, on the application of a navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority, it appears to the [<sup>F273</sup>Agency] that any works constructed or maintained by the applicants have made, or will make, a beneficial contribution towards the

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

fulfilment of the purposes of the [F273Agency's] water resources functions, the [F273Agency] shall contribute towards the expenditure incurred or to be incurred by the applicants in constructing or maintaining those works.

- (2) Where, on the application of the [F273Agency], it appears to a navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority that any works constructed or maintained by the [F273Agency] in the carrying out of its water resources functions have made, or will make, a beneficial contribution towards the carrying out of the functions of the authority to whom the application is made, that authority shall contribute to the [F273Agency] towards the expenditure incurred or to be incurred by the [F273Agency] in constructing or maintaining those works.
- (3) Subject to the following provisions of this section, the sums to be paid by way of contribution and the terms and conditions on which they are to be paid shall be such as the [F273Agency] and the other authority concerned may agree to be appropriate.
- (4) If on any application under this section—
  - (a) the [F273Agency] or, as the case may be, the other authority to whom the application is made refuses to make a contribution; or
  - (b) the [F273Agency] and the other authority concerned are unable to agree as to the sums to be contributed or the terms and conditions on which they are to be contributed,the [F273Agency] or the other authority concerned may refer the matter in dispute to the Secretary of State.
- (5) On a reference under subsection (4) above the Secretary of State may either—
  - (a) determine that matter himself; or
  - (b) refer it for determination to an arbitrator appointed by him for the purpose;and where any decision has been made by the Secretary of State or an arbitrator under this subsection, the decision shall be final and a contribution shall be made in accordance with the decision as if the sums, terms or conditions determined under this subsection had been agreed to be appropriate as mentioned in subsection (3) above.
- (6) Any expenditure incurred by a navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority in paying any contribution under this section shall be defrayed in the like manner as any corresponding expenditure of that authority; and that authority shall have the same powers for the purpose of raising money required for paying any such contribution as they would have for the purpose of raising money required for defraying any corresponding expenditure of that authority.
- (7) In subsection (6) above the references to corresponding expenditure of a navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority, in relation to the payment of a contribution in respect of any works, are references to expenditure incurred by the authority in performing the functions in respect of which it is claimed by the [F273Agency] that the works have made, or will make, such a beneficial contribution as is mentioned in subsection (2) above.
- (8) References in this section to the water resources functions of the [F273Agency] are references to the functions of the [F273Agency] under Part II of this Act or under any provisions not contained in that Part which are related water resources provisions in relation to Chapter II of that Part.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F273** Words in s. 120 and the sidenote substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C107** S. 120 applied (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 33(3)(a)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(p)

<sup>F274</sup>**121** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F274** Ss. 121-124 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 152, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

<sup>F275</sup>**122** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F275** Ss. 121-124 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 152, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**CHAPTER II**

**REVENUE PROVISIONS**

*Water resources charges*

<sup>F276</sup>**123** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F276** Ss. 121-124 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s.120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 152, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

<sup>F277</sup>**124** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F277** Ss. 121-124 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 152, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 125 Specific exemptions from water resources charges.

- (1) No charges, other than those for the purpose of recovering administrative expenses attributable to the exercise by the [F278 Agency] of its functions in relation to the application for the licence, shall be levied in respect of water authorised by a licence to be abstracted for use in the production of electricity or any other form of power by any generating station or apparatus of a capacity of not more than five megawatts.

F279 (2) .....

### Textual Amendments

**F278** Word in s. 125 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F279** S. 125(2) repealed (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 10, Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(s)

## 126 Agreements containing exemptions from charges.

- (1) The [F280 Agency] may, on the application of any person who is liable to pay charges to the [F280 Agency] for the abstraction of water under a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act, make an agreement with him either exempting him from the payment of charges or providing for charges to be levied on him at reduced rates specified in the agreement.
- (2) In the exercise of its powers under subsection (1) above in relation to any person, the [Agency] shall have regard to—
  - (a) the extent to which any works constructed at any time by that person or any works to be constructed by him have made, or will make, a beneficial contribution towards the fulfilment of the purposes of the functions of the [F280 Agency] under any enactment;
  - (b) any financial assistance which that person has rendered, or has agreed to render, towards the carrying out of works by the [Agency] in the performance of those functions; and
  - (c) any other material considerations.
- (3) The Secretary of State may give directions as to the exercise by the [F280 Agency] of its powers under subsection (1) above.
- (4) Without prejudice to the exercise of the power conferred by subsection (3) above, if on any application under this section—
  - (a) the [F280 Agency] refuses to make an agreement with the applicant as mentioned in subsection (1) above; or
  - (b) the applicant objects to the terms of such an agreement as proposed by the [F280 Agency] and that objection is not withdrawn,the applicant or the [F280 Agency] may refer the question in dispute to the Secretary of State.
- (5) On a reference under subsection (4) above—
  - (a) the Secretary of State shall determine the question in dispute, having regard to the matters to which, in accordance with subsection (2) above, the [F280 Agency] was required to have regard in relation to the applicant; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) may give directions to the [<sup>F280</sup>Agency] requiring it to make an agreement with the applicant in accordance with his decision.

<sup>F281</sup>(6) .....

- (7) Any decision of the Secretary of State on a reference under subsection (4) above shall be final; and section 69 above shall apply in relation to the decision on a reference under this section as it applies in relation to a decision on a reference such as is mentioned in subsection (1)(b) of that section, but as if references to the other party were references to the applicant.

#### Textual Amendments

**F280** Words in s. 126 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F281** S. 126(6) repealed (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), **Sch. 22 para. 153, Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**

### 127 Special charges in respect of spray irrigation.

- (1) Where a person (“the applicant”) is for the time being the holder of a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act to abstract water (“the applicant’s licence”), and in accordance with the provisions of that licence—
- (a) the water is to be used on land of which the applicant is the occupier; and
  - (b) the purposes for which water abstracted in pursuance of the licence is to be used consist of or include spray irrigation,
- the applicant may apply to the [<sup>F282</sup>Agency] to make an agreement with him under this section and, subject to the following provisions of this section and sections 128 and 129 below, the [<sup>F282</sup>Agency] may make such an agreement accordingly.
- (2) During any period for which an agreement under this section is in force, the following charges shall be payable by the applicant to the [<sup>F282</sup>Agency] in respect of the applicant’s licence, in so far as it relates to water authorised to be abstracted and used on the relevant land, that is to say—
- (a) basic charges calculated, in accordance with the agreement, by reference to the quantity of water authorised to be so abstracted and used from time to time in pursuance of the licence; and
  - (b) supplementary charges calculated, in accordance with the agreement, by reference to the quantity of water which is measured or assessed as being abstracted from time to time by or on behalf of the applicant from the source of supply to which the applicant’s licence relates for use on the relevant land.
- (3) In determining—
- (a) whether to make an agreement with the applicant under this section; and
  - (b) the charges to be leviable under such an agreement,
- the [<sup>F282</sup>Agency] shall have regard to the extent to which, in any year within the period proposed to be specified in the agreement as the period for which it is made, the quantity of water referred to in paragraph (a) of subsection (2) above is likely to exceed the quantity referred to in paragraph (b) of that subsection.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Where the applicant’s licence authorises water abstracted in pursuance of the licence to be used on the relevant land for purposes which include spray irrigation and other purposes—
- (a) any agreement made under this section shall provide for apportioning, as between those purposes respectively, the quantity referred to in paragraph (a) of subsection (2) above and the quantity referred to in paragraph (b) of that subsection;
  - (b) subsection (2) above shall have effect as if in each of those paragraphs the reference to the quantity of water mentioned in that paragraph were a reference to so much of that quantity as in accordance with the agreement is apportioned to the purpose of spray irrigation; and
  - (c) in subsection (3) above any reference to either of those paragraphs shall be construed as a reference to that paragraph as modified by paragraph (b) of this subsection.
- (5) An application under subsection (1) above may be made by a person who has applied for, but is not yet the holder of, a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act to abstract water; and, in relation to an application so made or to an agreement made on such an application—
- (a) the reference in that subsection to the provisions of the applicant’s licence shall be construed as a reference to the proposals contained in the application for a licence; and
  - (b) any other reference in this section or in section 128 or 129 below to the applicant’s licence shall be construed as a reference to any licence granted to the applicant in pursuance of the application mentioned in paragraph (a) above or in pursuance of an appeal consequential upon the application so mentioned.
- (6) In this section and sections 128 and 129 below—
- “the applicant” and “the applicant’s licence” shall be construed, subject to subsection (5) above, in accordance with subsection (1) above;
  - “the relevant land” means the land on which the applicant’s licence, as for the time being in force, authorises water abstracted in pursuance of the licence to be used for purposes which consist of or include spray irrigation; and
  - “year” means a period of twelve months beginning—
- (a) with the date on which an agreement under this section comes into force or is proposed to come into force; or
  - (b) with an anniversary of that date.

#### Textual Amendments

**F282** Words in s. 127 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C108** S. 127(1)(4) modified (18.5.1992) by S.I. 1992/1096, arts. 3, 4, Sch.

### 128 Duration of agreement under section 127.

- (1) The period specified in an agreement under section 127 above as the period for which it is made shall not be less than five years.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) An agreement under section 127 above shall remain in force until the occurrence of whichever of the following events first occurs, that is to say—
  - (a) the period specified in the agreement, as mentioned in subsection (1) above, comes to an end;
  - (b) the applicant’s licence expires or is revoked;
  - (c) the applicant ceases to be the occupier of the relevant land or, if he has previously ceased to be the occupier of a part or parts of that land, ceases to be the occupier of the remainder of it;
  - (d) the agreement is terminated under subsection (4) below.
- (3) At any time while an agreement under section 127 above is in force, the applicant may apply to the [F283 Agency] to terminate the agreement.
- (4) If, on an application for the termination of an agreement under section 127 above, the [F283 Agency] is satisfied that, by reason of any change of circumstances since the agreement was made, it ought to be terminated, it may terminate the agreement, either unconditionally or subject to such conditions (whether as to any payment to be made by the applicant or otherwise) as the [F283 Agency] and the applicant may agree.

**Textual Amendments**  
**F283** Words in s. 128 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

**129 Directions and appeals with respect to exercise of powers under sections 127 and 128.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may give directions as to the exercise by the [F284 Agency] of its powers under sections 127 and 128 above.
- (2) Without prejudice to the exercise of the power conferred by subsection (1) above, if on any application under section 127 or 128 above—
  - (a) the [F284 Agency] refuses to make or terminate an agreement under section 127 above; or
  - (b) the applicant objects to the proposals of the [F284 Agency]—
    - (i) as to the terms of such an agreement; or
    - (ii) as to the conditions subject to which such an agreement is to be terminated,
 and that objection is not withdrawn,
 

the applicant or the [F284 Agency] may refer the question in dispute to the Secretary of State.
- (3) On a reference under subsection (2) above—
  - (a) the Secretary of State shall determine the question in dispute, having regard to the matters to which, in accordance with subsection (3) of section 127 above, the [F284 Agency] would be required to have regard in relation to the applicant on an application under that section; and
  - (b) may give directions to the [F284 Agency] requiring it to make an agreement with the applicant in accordance with his decision.

F285 (4) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Any decision of the Secretary of State on a reference under subsection (2) above shall be final; and section 69 above shall apply in relation to the decision on a reference under this section as it applies in relation to a decision on a reference such as is mentioned in subsection (1)(b) of that section, but as if references to the other party were references to the applicant.

#### Textual Amendments

- F284** Words in s.129 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F285** S. 129(4) repealed (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), **Sch. 22 para. 153** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**

### 130 Charges in respect of abstraction from waters of British Waterways Board.

- (1) Where the British Waterways Board are the holders of a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act authorising abstraction from any inland waters to which section 66 above applies, then, the charges which, apart from this subsection, would be payable in respect of that licence either—
- (a) shall be reduced to such extent, and as so reduced shall be payable subject to such conditions; or
  - (b) shall not be payable,
- as the Board and the [<sup>F286</sup>Agency] may agree or, in default of such agreement, the Secretary of State may determine.
- (2) Where—
- (a) a person other than the British Waterways Board is the holder of a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act authorising abstraction from any inland waters to which section 66 above applies; and
  - (b) any charges in respect of that licence are payable,
- the [<sup>F286</sup> Agency] shall pay to the Board such proportion of those charges, subject to such conditions, as the Board and the [<sup>F286</sup>Agency] may agree, or, in default of such agreement, the Secretary of State may determine.

#### Textual Amendments

- F286** Words in s. 130 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### *Charges in connection with control of pollution*

<sup>F287</sup>131 .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F287** Ss. 131, 132 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), **Sch. 22 para. 154, Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F288</sup> **132** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F288** Ss. 131, 132 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 154, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Levies by the [<sup>F289</sup>Agency] on local authorities*

**Textual Amendments**

**F289** Word in cross-heading to s. 133 substituted (subject to other provisions of amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

<sup>F291</sup> **133** **Power to authorise the [<sup>F290</sup>Agency] to issue levies.**

**Textual Amendments**

**F290** Words in s. 133 and the sidenote substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F291** S. 133 repealed (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 44** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, **art. 3(g)** (with **art. 5(1)**)

*General drainage charges*

**134** **Raising of general drainage charges.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, the [<sup>F292</sup>Agency] may raise at an amount per hectare of chargeable land in a local flood defence district a charge to be known as a general drainage charge and to be levied in accordance with sections 135 and 136 below.
- (2) The [<sup>F292</sup>Agency] shall not levy a general drainage charge in respect of any local flood defence district unless the regional flood defence committee for the area in which that district is situated have recommended that such a charge should be raised.
- (3) For the purposes of this section and sections 135 and 136 below the area of a regional flood defence committee in relation to which no local flood defence scheme is in force shall be treated as a single local flood defence district; and any parts of such an area in relation to which no such scheme is in force shall be treated as included in a single such district.

**Textual Amendments**

**F292** Words in s. 134 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C109** S. 134 restricted (1.12.1991) by [Water Consolidation \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1991 \(c. 60, SIF 130\)](#), ss. 2(2), 4(2), [Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2\(2\)](#)

### **135 Amount, assessment etc. of general drainage charge.**

- (1) A general drainage charge raised by the [<sup>F293</sup>Agency] for a local flood defence district for any year shall be at a uniform amount per hectare of chargeable land in that district.
- (2) The uniform amount referred to in subsection (1) above shall be ascertained, subject to subsection (3) below, by multiplying the relevant quotient <sup>F294</sup> . . . by one penny and by such number as may be specified by either of the Ministers by order made for the purposes of this subsection.
- (3) The number specified in an order under this section for the purposes of subsection (2) above shall (apart from any adjustment made to it to take account of rough grazing land) be such as the Minister making the order considers will secure, so far as reasonably practicable, that the amount specified in paragraph (a) below will be equal to the amount specified in paragraph (b) below, that is to say—
  - (a) the aggregate amount produced by any charge levied by reference to a relevant quotient <sup>F295</sup> . . . ; and
  - (b) the aggregate amount which, if the chargeable land in the local flood defence district had been liable to be rated for the financial year beginning in 1989, would have been produced by a rate levied on the land at an amount in the pound (of rateable value) equal to that quotient multiplied by one penny.
- (4) An order under this section may be made so as to apply either—
  - (a) to all general drainage charges; or
  - (b) to the general drainage charges proposed to be raised in any one or more local flood defence districts specified in the order;and any such order applying to more than one local flood defence district may make different provision as respects the different districts to which it applies.
- (5) Schedule 15 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the assessment, incidence, payment and enforcement of general drainage charges.
- (6) The power of each of the Ministers to make an order under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

[<sup>F296</sup>(7) In this section “relevant quotient” means a quotient determined for the year concerned in accordance with rules contained in regulations made by either of the Ministers.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F293** Word in s. 135 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); [S.I. 1996/186, art. 3](#)

**F294** Words in s. 135(2) repealed (1.8.1992 subject to savings in [S.I. 1992/1755, art. 2\(2\)](#)) by [Local Government Finance Act 1992 \(c. 14\)](#), s. 117(1)(2), [Sch. 13 para. 96\(1\)](#), [Sch. 14](#) (with s. 118(1)(2)(4)); [S.I. 1992/1755, art. 2\(1\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F295** Words in s. 135(3)(a) repealed (1.8.1992 subject to savings in S.I. 1992/1755, **art. 2(2)**) by Local Government Finance Act 1992 (c. 14), s. 117(1)(2), Sch. 13 para. 96(2), **Sch. 14** (with s. 118(1)(2)(4)); S.I. 1992/1755, **art. 2(1)**

**F296** S. 135(7) added (1.8.1992 subject to savings in S.I. 1992/1755, **art. 2(2)**) by Local Government Finance Act 1992 (c. 14), s. 117(1), **Sch. 13 para. 96(3)** (with s. 118(1)(2)(4)); S.I. 1992/1755, **art. 2(1)**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C110** S. 135 restricted (1.12.1991) by Water Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1991 (c. 60, SIF 130), ss. 2(2), 4(2), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 2(2)**.

**F297** **136** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F297** S. 136 repealed (1.8.1992 subject to savings in S.I. 1992/1755, **art. 2(2)**) by Local Government Finance Act 1992 (c. 14), s. 117(1)(2), Sch. 13 para. 97, **Sch.14** (with s. 118(1)(2)(4)); S.I. 1992/1755, **art. 2(1)**

*Special drainage charges*

**137 Special drainage charges in interests of agriculture.**

- (1) Where it appears to the [<sup>F298</sup>Agency] that the interests of agriculture require the carrying out, improvement or maintenance of drainage works in connection with any watercourses in the area of any regional flood defence committee, the [Agency] may submit to either of the Ministers for confirmation a scheme under this section with respect to those watercourses.
- (2) A scheme under this section with respect to any watercourses is a scheme—
  - (a) designating those watercourses, and any watercourses connected with them, for the purposes of this section; and
  - (b) making provision for the raising, in accordance with section 138 below, of a charge (known as a “special drainage charge”) for the purpose of meeting the expenses of drainage works in connection with the designated watercourses and any expenses arising from such works.
- (3) A scheme under this section shall designate for the purposes of the special drainage charge so much of the area of the regional flood defence committee as consists of land which, in the opinion of the [<sup>F298</sup>Agency], is agricultural land that would benefit from drainage works in connection with the designated watercourses.
- (4) The watercourses designated in any scheme under this section shall, if the scheme is confirmed, be treated for the purposes of this Act and the <sup>M40</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 as part of a main river.
- (5) A scheme under this section-
  - (a) may make provision for any of the matters referred to in subsections (1) and (2) of section 108 above; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) may provide for the revocation or amendment of, and for the retransfer of property, rights, powers, duties, obligations and liabilities transferred by, any previous scheme under this section.
- (6) Schedule 16 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the making and confirmation of schemes under this section.
- (7) For the purposes of this section—
  - (a) the reference to expenses of drainage works is a reference to expenses incurred in the construction, improvement or maintenance of drainage works;
  - (b) the expenses of any drainage works which may be necessary in consequence of other drainage works, and so much of any contribution made under section 57 of the <sup>M41</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 as is fairly attributable to such expenses, shall be deemed to be expenses arising from those other drainage works; and
  - (c) the expenses of any drainage works shall be taken (without prejudice to section 221(5) below) to include a proper proportion of the cost of the officers and buildings and establishment of the authority carrying them out.
- (8) In this section and Schedule 16 to this Act “watercourse” has the same meaning as in Part IV of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F298** Words in s. 137 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M40** 1991 c. 59.

**M41** 1991 c. 59.

### 138 Levying and amount of special drainage charge.

- (1) A special drainage charge shall be levied by the [<sup>F299</sup>Agency] in respect of chargeable land included in the area designated for the purposes of the charge by the scheme authorising it (“the relevant chargeable land”).
- (2) The special drainage charge raised for any year shall be at a uniform amount per hectare of the relevant chargeable land.
- (3) The uniform amount referred to in subsection (2) above shall be determined by the regional flood defence committee for the area which includes the relevant chargeable land but shall exceed neither—
  - (a) an amount to be specified in the scheme as the maximum amount of the charge or such greater amount as may be authorised for the purposes of the scheme by an order made by one of the Ministers on the application of the [<sup>F299</sup>Agency]; nor
  - (b) twenty-five pence or such other amount as may be substituted for twenty-five pence by an order made by one of the Ministers and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons.
- (4) Before either of the Ministers makes an order under subsection (3)(a) above he shall—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) consult with such of the associations and persons concerned as he considers appropriate;
  - (b) cause a notice of his intention to make the order, and of the time (which shall not be less than thirty days) within which objections to the proposed order may be made to him, to be published in such manner as he thinks best adapted for informing persons affected;
  - (c) if he considers it necessary, afford such persons an opportunity of appearing before and being heard by a person appointed by him for the purpose; and
  - (d) consider the report of the person so appointed and any objections duly made.
- (5) An order under subsection (3)(b) above may be made so as to apply—
- (a) to special drainage charges in general; or
  - (b) to the special drainage charges proposed to be raised in respect of such areas of regional flood defence committees as may be specified in the order; or
  - (c) to special drainage charges proposed to be raised in pursuance of one or more schemes made under section 137 above and so specified;
- and any such order applying to the charges proposed to be raised in respect of more than one area of a regional flood defence committee, or authorised by more than one such scheme, may make different provision for the charges in respect of different areas or, as the case may be, the charges authorised by the different schemes.
- (6) The power of each of the Ministers to make an order under subsection (3)(b) above shall be exercisable by statutory instrument; and section 14 of the <sup>M42</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 (power to revoke or amend orders made by statutory instrument) shall apply to the power to make orders under subsection (3)(a) above as it applies, by virtue of this subsection, to the power to make orders under subsection (3)(b) above.
- (7) Schedule 15 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the assessment, incidence, payment and enforcement of special drainage charges.

#### Textual Amendments

**F299** Words in s. 138 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M42** 1978 c. 30.

### *Revenue from internal drainage boards*

#### **139 Contributions from internal drainage boards.**

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3) below, the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] shall by resolution require every internal drainage board to make towards the expenses of the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] such contribution as the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] may consider to be fair.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) below, where an internal drainage district (“the main internal drainage district”) comprises two or more other internal districts (“minor internal drainage districts”), the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] shall not require the drainage board for that district to make any contribution towards the expenses of the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] except in

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

respect of such part, if any, of that district as is not situated within any minor internal drainage district.

- (3) Notwithstanding subsection (2) above, the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency], after determining what contribution should be made by the drainage board for each of the minor internal drainage districts, may, if it thinks fit, require the drainage board for the main internal drainage district to pay direct to the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] an amount equal to the aggregate of those contributions.
- (4) If the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] make a requisition under subsection (3) above, the drainage board of the main internal drainage district shall raise the amount paid by them under that subsection to the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] by means of drainage rates levied by them within, or special levies issued in respect of, the main internal drainage district or, as the case may be, such part of that district as is situated within a minor internal drainage district.
- (5) Without prejudice to subsection (3) of section 140 below, a resolution under this section may be acted upon by the [<sup>F300</sup>Agency] forthwith, notwithstanding that the time for bringing an appeal under that section has not expired or that an appeal so brought is pending.

#### Textual Amendments

**F300** Words in s. 139 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

### 140 Appeals in respect of resolutions under section 139.

- (1) If—
  - (a) an internal drainage board is aggrieved by a resolution of the [<sup>F301</sup>Agency] under section 139 above determining the amount of any contribution; or
  - (b) the council of any county [<sup>F302</sup>, county borough] or London borough is aggrieved by any such resolution on the ground that the amount of the contribution required to be made by an internal drainage board is inadequate, the board or council may, within six weeks after the date on which notice of the resolution is given by the [<sup>F301</sup>Agency] to the internal drainage board in question, appeal to the relevant Minister against the resolution.
- (2) On an appeal under this section the relevant Minister may, after—
  - (a) considering any objections made to him; and
  - (b) if he thinks fit, holding a local public inquiry,make such an order in the matter as he thinks just.
- (3) Where the [<sup>F301</sup>Agency] has acted on a resolution by virtue of section 139(5) above and an appeal is brought in respect of the resolution, the relevant Minister shall by his order direct such adjustment to be made in respect of any sums recovered or paid in pursuance of the resolution as may be necessary for giving effect to his decision.
- (4) Where the relevant Minister makes an order under this section, he shall lay before Parliament particulars of the matter in respect of which the appeal was made and of the reasons for his order.
- (5) Compliance with any order made by the relevant Minister under this section may be enforced by mandamus.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) In this section “the relevant Minister”—
- (a) in relation to an internal drainage district wholly in Wales or the drainage board for such a district, means the Secretary of State;
  - (b) in relation to an internal drainage district partly in Wales or the drainage board for such a district, means the Ministers; and
  - (c) in any other case, means the Minister.

#### Textual Amendments

- F301** Words in s. 140 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F302** Words in s. 140(1)(b) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 22(5), **Sch. 11 Pt. I para. 3(3)** (with ss. 54(4)(7), 55(5) Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)); S.I. 1996/396, art. 3, **Sch. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C111** S. 140 extended (1.12.1991) by **Land Drainage Act 1991 (c. 59, SIF 73:1)**, ss. **58(7)**, 76(2).

### 141 Precepts for recovery of contributions from internal drainage boards.

- (1) The [<sup>F303</sup>Agency] may issue precepts to internal drainage boards requiring payment of any amount required to be contributed by those boards under section 139 above.
- (2) An internal drainage board shall pay, in accordance with any precept issued to them under this section, the amount thereby demanded.
- (3) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F303</sup>Agency] to prepare, in such form as the relevant Minister may direct, a statement of—
  - (a) the purposes to which the amount demanded by any precept issued by the [<sup>F303</sup>Agency] under this section is intended to be applied; and
  - (b) the basis on which it is calculated;
 and an internal drainage board shall not be liable to pay the amount demanded by any such precept until they have received such a statement.
- (4) Compliance with any precept issued by the [<sup>F303</sup>Agency] in accordance with this section may be enforced by mandamus.
- (5) In this section “the relevant Minister” has the same meaning as in section 140 above.

#### Textual Amendments

- F303** Words in s. 141 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### *Fisheries contributions*

### 142 Fisheries contributions.

- (1) Each of the Ministers shall have power, on an application made to him by the [<sup>F304</sup>Agency], by order made by statutory instrument to make provision in relation to an area defined by the order—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) for the imposition on the owners and occupiers of fisheries in that area of requirements to pay contributions to the [<sup>F304</sup>Agency], of such amounts as may be determined under the order, in respect of the expenses of the carrying out in relation to that area of the [<sup>F304</sup>Agency's] functions with respect to fisheries;
  - (b) for such contributions to be paid or recovered in such manner, and to be refundable, in such circumstances as may be specified in or determined under the order.
- (2) Subsections [<sup>F305</sup>(2) to (6)]of section 115 above shall have effect in relation to the power conferred by subsection (1) above as they have effect in relation to the power conferred by subsection (1) of that section.
- (3) The reference in this section to the owners and occupiers of fisheries shall have the same meaning as any such reference in the <sup>M43</sup>Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975.

#### Textual Amendments

**F304** Words in s. 142 substituted (subject to other provisions of amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F305** Words in s. 142(2) substituted (21.9.1995) by 1995 c. 25, s. 116, **Sch. 21 para. 2(3)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C112** S. 142 excluded (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1746, **arts. 1(1), 4(1)**; S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M43** 1975 c. 51.

### Navigation tolls

#### 143 Power of Authority to levy navigation tolls.

- (1) Where any navigable waters—
  - (a) in England and Wales; or
  - (b) in so much of the territorial sea adjacent to England and Wales as is included in the area of a regional flood defence committee,are not subject to the control of any navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority, the [<sup>F306</sup>Agency] may apply to the Secretary of State for an order imposing tolls in respect of the navigation of vessels in those waters.
- (2) An order under this section shall not be made unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that the cost of the maintenance or works in connection with the waters to which the order relates has been or will be increased as a result of the use of those waters for purposes of navigation.
- (3) Schedule 17 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the making of orders under this section.
- (4) Any tolls payable under this section in respect of the navigation of a vessel in any water referred to in subsection (1) above—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) may be demanded from the person in charge of the vessel by any person authorised for that purpose by the [<sup>F306</sup>Agency]; and
- (b) if not paid on demand, may be recovered from either the person in charge of the vessel or the owner of the vessel.

#### Textual Amendments

**F306** Words in s. 143 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C113** S. 143 modified (01.12.1991) by **Land Drainage Act 1991 (c. 59, SIF 73:1), ss. 56(1), 76(2)**.

**C114** S. 143(4) modified (01.12.1991) by **Land Drainage Act 1991 (c. 59, SIF 73:1), ss. 56(2), 76(2)**.

### *Incidental power of the Authority to impose charges*

### *Interpretation of Chapter II*

#### 145 Interpretation of Chapter II.

In this Chapter—

“agricultural buildings” has the meaning provided by section 26(4) of the <sup>M44</sup>General Rate Act 1967 as amended by the <sup>M45</sup>Rating Act 1971;

“agricultural land” means—

- (a) land used as arable, meadow or pasture ground only;
- (b) land used for a plantation or a wood or for the growth of saleable underwood; and
- (c) land exceeding one tenth of a hectare used for the purpose of poultry farming, market gardens, nursery grounds, orchards or allotments, including allotment gardens within the meaning of the <sup>M46</sup>Allotments Act 1922,

but does not include land occupied together with a house as a park, gardens (other than as aforesaid) or pleasure grounds, land kept or preserved mainly or exclusively for purposes of sport or recreation or land used as a racecourse;

“chargeable land” means the agricultural land and agricultural buildings in so much of the area of a regional flood defence committee as does not fall within an internal drainage district, excluding rough grazing land and woodlands other than commercial woodlands;

“commercial woodlands” means woodlands managed on a commercial basis with a view to the realisation of profits;

“drainage” has the same meaning as in Part IV above;

“drainage charge” means general drainage charge or special drainage charge;

“rough grazing land” means land of either of the following descriptions, that is to say—

- (a) land used as pasture ground on which the vegetation consists solely or mainly of one or more of the following, that is to say, bracken, gorse, heather, rushes and sedge; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) land so used which is unsuitable for mowing by machine and on which the vegetation consists solely or mainly of grass of poor feeding value; and  
“spray irrigation” has the same meaning as in Chapter II of Part II of this Act.

**Marginal Citations**

- M44** 1967 c. 9.  
**M45** 1971 c. 39.  
**M46** 1922 c. 51.

**CHAPTER III**

**GRANTS AND LOANS**

*Grants to the <sup>F307</sup> Agency]*

**Textual Amendments**

- F307** Word in s. 146 cross-heading substituted (subject to other provisions of amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

<sup>F308</sup>**146** .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F308** S. 146 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 155, Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

<sup>F309</sup>**147 Grants for drainage works.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F309** Ss. 147-149 repealed (17.3.2004 for E., 1.4.2004 for W.) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, ss. 69(1), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 2(a)(d); S.I. 2004/910, art. 2(1)(b)

<sup>F309</sup>**148 Grants towards cost of flood warning systems.**  
.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F309** Ss. 147-149 repealed (17.3.2004 for E., 1.4.2004 for W.) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, ss. 69(1), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 2(a)(d); S.I. 2004/910, art. 2(1)(b)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F309 149 Other grants in respect of exercise of powers under Part VII for drainage purposes.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F309** Ss. 147-149 repealed (17.3.2004 for E., 1.4.2004 for W.) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 69(1), 105(3), Sch. 9 Pt. 3; S.I. 2004/641, art. 2(a)(d); S.I. 2004/910, art. 2(1)(b)

**F310 150** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F310** Ss. 150-153 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 156, Sch. 24 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

*Borrowing by the Authority*

**F311 151** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F311** Ss. 150-153 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 156 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

**F312 152** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F312** Ss. 150-153 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 156 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

**F313 153** .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F313** Ss. 150-153 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 156 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART VII

### LAND AND WORKS POWERS

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C115** Pt. VII (ss. 154-186): Transfer of functions (1.4.1996) to the Agency by 1995 c. 25, s. 2(1)(a)(iv) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

## CHAPTER I

### POWERS OF THE [F314 AGENCY]

#### Textual Amendments

**F314** Word in Pt. VII Chapter I heading substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, Sch. 22 para. 128 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3

#### *Provisions in relation to land*

#### 154 Compulsory purchase etc.

- (1) The [F315 Agency] may be authorised by either of the Ministers to purchase compulsorily any land anywhere in England and Wales which is required by the [F315 Agency] for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying out of its functions.
- (2) The power of each of the Ministers under subsection (1) above shall include power—
  - (a) to authorise the acquisition of interests in, and rights over, land by the creation of new interests and rights; and
  - (b) by authorising the acquisition by the [F315 Agency] of any rights over land which is to be or has been acquired by the [F315 Agency], to provide for the extinguishment of those rights.
- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) above, the land which the [F315 Agency] may be authorised under that subsection to purchase compulsorily shall include land which is or will be required for the purpose of being given in exchange for, or for any right over, any other land which for the purposes of the <sup>M47</sup>Acquisition of Land Act 1981 is or forms part of a common, open space or a fuel or field garden allotment.
- (4) Subject to section 182 below, the Acquisition of Land Act 1981 shall apply to any compulsory purchase under subsection (1) above of any land by the [F315 Agency]; and Schedule 3 to the said Act of 1981 shall apply to the compulsory acquisition under that subsection of rights by the creation of new rights.
- (5) Schedule 18 to this Act shall have effect for the purpose of modifying enactments relating to compensation and the provisions of the <sup>M48</sup>Compulsory Purchase Act 1965 in their application in relation to the compulsory acquisition under subsection (1) above of a right over land by the creation of a new right.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) The provisions of Part I of the <sup>M49</sup>Compulsory Purchase Act 1965 (so far as applicable), other than sections 4 to 8, 10, 21, 27(1) and 31 and Schedule 4, shall apply in relation to any power to acquire land by agreement which is conferred, by virtue of any provision of this Act [<sup>F316</sup>or otherwise (including section 37 of the 1995 Act (incidental general powers of the Agency))], on the [Agency] as if—
- (a) any reference in those provisions to the acquiring authority were a reference to the [<sup>F315</sup>Agency]; and
  - (b) any reference to land subject to compulsory purchase were a reference to land which may be purchased by agreement under that power.

#### Textual Amendments

**F315** Word in s. 154 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F316** Words in s. 154(6) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 157** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M47** 1981 c. 67.

**M48** 1965 c. 56.

**M49** 1965 c. 56.

### 155 Accretions of land resulting from drainage works.

- (1) If the relevant Minister certifies that, as the result of—
- (a) any drainage works carried out or improved, or proposed to be carried out or improved, by the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] in connection with the tidal waters of a main river; or
  - (b) any drainage works transferred from a drainage body to the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] in pursuance of this Act or the <sup>M50</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991,
- there has been or is likely to be any accretion of land, the powers of the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] by virtue of this Act, for the purpose of carrying out its functions, to acquire land or any interest in or right over land by agreement or compulsorily shall include power so to acquire the land mentioned in subsection (2) below.
- (2) The land mentioned in subsection (1) above is—
- (a) the accretion of land or the land to which the accretion will, if it takes place, be added, together with any right to reclaim or embank the accretion; and
  - (b) such other land as is reasonably required for the purpose of reclamation of the accretion or for the enjoyment of it when reclaimed.
- (3) An agreement or order with respect to the acquisition of any land or rights by virtue of this section may provide for the transfer to the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] of any liability for the upkeep, maintenance and repair of any bank or drainage work or of any other like liability.
- (4) Where the value of any land or right is increased by the carrying out or proposed carrying out of drainage works by the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] the amount of the increase shall not be taken into account in assessing the compensation in respect of the compulsory acquisition of it.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Where, by reason of a certificate having been given by the relevant Minister under this section in relation to any drainage works, the [Agency] has acquired any land or right and a grant has been made out of public moneys for defraying the cost or part of the cost of the carrying out of the works, the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] shall—
- (a) on being so required by the Crown Estate Commissioners; and
  - (b) on payment by the Commissioners to the [Agency] of the sum paid by the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] in respect of the acquisition of the land or right, together with the amount of any costs incurred by the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency] in connection with the acquisition,
- transfer the land or right to the Commissioners or to any person nominated by them.
- (6) If the [<sup>F317</sup>Agency], on being so required by the Crown Estate Commissioners in pursuance of subsection (5) above, fail to transfer to the Commissioners any land or right, the relevant Minister may by a vesting order transfer the land or right to the Commissioners or to a person nominated by them; and, for the purposes of this subsection, the relevant Minister shall be deemed to be a competent authority within the meaning of section 9 of the <sup>M51</sup>Law of Property Act 1925.
- (7) In this section—
- “banks” has the same meaning as in Part IV of this Act;
  - “drainage body” has the same meaning as in section 108 above;
  - “the relevant Minister”—
- (a) in relation to England, means the Minister; and
  - (b) in relation to Wales, means the Secretary of State.

#### Textual Amendments

**F317** Word in s. 155 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M50** 1991 c. 59.

**M51** 1925 c. 20.

## 156 Acquisition of land etc. for fisheries purposes.

- (1) [<sup>F318</sup>Without prejudice to section 37 of the 1995 Act (incidental general powers of the Agency)], the powers conferred on the [<sup>F319</sup>Agency] by that section and section 154 above include power to purchase or take on lease (either by agreement or, if so authorised, compulsorily)—
- (a) any dam, fishing weir, fishing mill dam, fixed engine or other artificial obstruction and any fishery attached to or worked in connection with any such obstruction;
  - (b) so much of the bank adjoining a dam as may be necessary for making or maintaining a fish pass for the purposes of section 10 of the <sup>M52</sup>Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975; and
  - (c) for the purpose of erecting and working a fixed engine, any fishery land or foreshore together with any easement over any adjoining land necessary for securing access to the fishery land or foreshore so acquired.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) [<sup>F318</sup>Without prejudice to section 37 of the 1995 Act (incidental general powers of the Agency)], the may—
- (a) either alter or remove an obstruction acquired in the exercise of the powers mentioned in subsection (1) above; or
  - (b) by itself or its lessees use or work in any lawful manner the obstruction for fishing purposes and exercise the right by any fishery so acquired,
- subject, in the case of an obstruction or fishery acquired by way of lease, to the terms of the lease.
- (3) Expressions used in this section and in the Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975 have the same meanings in this section as in that Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F318** Words in s. 156(1)(2) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 158** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F319** Word in s. 156 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M52** 1975 c. 51.

### 157 Restriction on disposals of compulsorily acquired land.

- (1) The [<sup>F320</sup>Agency] shall not dispose of any of its compulsorily acquired land, or of any interest or right in or over any of that land, except with the consent of, or in accordance with a general authorisation given by, one of the Ministers.
- (2) A consent or authorisation for the purposes of this section—
- (a) shall be set out in a notice served on the [<sup>F320</sup>Agency] by the Minister who is giving the consent or authorisation; and
  - (b) in the case of an authorisation, may be combined with an authorisation for the purposes of section 156 of the <sup>M53</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 (restrictions on disposals of land by a water or sewerage undertaker).
- (3) A consent or authorisation for the purposes of this section may be given on such conditions as the Minister who is giving it considers appropriate.
- (4) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (3) above, the conditions of a consent or authorisation for the purposes of this section may include a requirement that, before there is any disposal, an opportunity of acquiring the land in question, or an interest or right in or over that land, is to be made available to such person as may be specified in or determined under provision contained in the notice setting out the consent or authorisation in question.
- (5) A requirement under subsection (4) above may require the opportunity to be made available in such manner and on such terms as may be specified in or determined under provision contained in the notice setting out the consent or authorisation in question.
- [<sup>F321</sup>(6) In this section “compulsorily acquired land”, in relation to the Agency, means any land of the Agency which—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) was acquired by the Agency compulsorily under the provisions of section 154 above or of an order under section 168 below;
- (b) was acquired by the Agency at a time when it was authorised under those provisions to acquire the land compulsorily;
- (c) being land which has been transferred to the Agency from the Authority by section 3 of the 1995 Act, was acquired by the Authority—
  - (i) compulsorily, under the provisions of section 154 above or of an order under section 168 below or under the provisions of section 151 of the <sup>M54</sup>Water Act 1989 or of an order under section 155 of that Act; or
  - (ii) at a time when it was authorised under those provisions to acquire the land compulsorily;
- (d) being land—
  - (i) which has been so transferred, and
  - (ii) which was transferred to the Authority in accordance with a scheme under Schedule 2 to the <sup>M55</sup>Water Act 1989,was acquired by a predecessor of the Authority compulsorily under so much of any enactment in force at any time before 1st September 1989 as conferred powers of compulsory acquisition; or
- (e) being land transferred as mentioned in sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) of paragraph (d) above, was acquired by such a predecessor at a time when it was authorised to acquire the land by virtue of any such powers as are mentioned in that paragraph.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F320** Words in s. 157 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F321** S. 157(6) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 159** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M53** 1991 c. 56.

**M54** 1989 c. 15.

**M55** 1989 c. 29.

### *Works agreements for water resources purposes*

#### **158 Works agreements for water resources purposes.**

- (1) Without prejudice to the generality of the powers of the [<sup>F322</sup>Agency] by virtue of [<sup>F323</sup>section 37 of the 1995 Act (incidental general powers of the Agency)] but subject to subsection (2) below, those powers shall include power to enter into an agreement with any water undertaker, with any sewerage undertaker, with any local authority or joint planning board, or with the owner or occupier of any land, with respect to any one or more of the following matters, that is to say—
  - (a) the carrying out by any party to the agreement of works which the [<sup>F322</sup>Agency] considers necessary or expedient in connection with the carrying out of any of the [<sup>F322</sup>Agency's] functions by virtue of Part II of this Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the maintenance by any party to the agreement of works carried out in pursuance of the agreement;
  - (c) provision for the [<sup>F322</sup>Agency] to use, or have access to, any land for any purpose connected with the carrying out of any of those functions;
  - (d) the manner in which any reservoir is to be operated.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by a direction to the [Agency] direct that, in such cases or classes of cases as are specified in the direction, the [<sup>F322</sup>Agency] shall not enter into any such agreement as is mentioned in subsection (1) above except with his consent.
- (3) An agreement such as is mentioned in subsection (1) above may contain such incidental and consequential provisions (including provisions of a financial character) as appear to the [<sup>F322</sup>Agency] necessary or expedient for the purposes of the agreement.
- (4) Where an agreement such as is mentioned in subsection (1) above is made with an owner of land, other than registered land, and the agreement provides that the provisions of this subsection shall have effect in relation to the agreement—
- (a) the agreement may be registered as a land charge under the <sup>M56</sup>Land Charges Act 1972 as if it were a charge affecting land falling within paragraph (iii) of Class D;
  - (b) the provisions of section 4 of that Act (which relates to the effect of non-registration) shall apply as if the agreement were such a land charge; and
  - (c) subject to the provisions of section 4 of that Act, the agreement shall be binding upon any successor of that owner to the same extent as it is binding upon that owner, notwithstanding that it would not have been binding upon that successor apart from the provisions of this paragraph.
- (5) Where an agreement such as is mentioned in subsection (1) above is made with an owner of land which is registered land, and the agreement provides that the provisions of this subsection shall have effect in relation to the agreement—
- <sup>F324</sup>(a) the agreement may be the subject of a notice in the register of title under the Land Registration Act 2002 as if it were an interest affecting the registered land;
  - (b) the provisions of sections 28 to 30 of that Act (effect of dispositions of registered land on priority of adverse interests) shall apply as if the agreement were such an interest;]
  - (c) [<sup>F325</sup>subject to the provisions of those sections,] the agreement shall be binding upon any successor of that owner to the same extent as it is binding upon that owner, notwithstanding that it would not have been binding upon that successor apart from the provisions of this paragraph.
- (6) In this section—
- “registered land” has the same meaning as in the [<sup>F326</sup>Land Registration Act 2002]; and
  - “successor”, in relation to an agreement with the owner of any land, means a person deriving title or otherwise claiming under that owner, otherwise than in right of an interest or charge to which the interest of the owner was subject immediately before the following time, that is to say—
    - (a) where the land is not registered land, the time when the agreement was made; and
    - (b) where the land is registered land, the time when the notice of the agreement was registered.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F322** Word in s. 158 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F323** Words in s. 158(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 160** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F324** S. 158(5)(a)(b) substituted (13.10.2003) by Land Registration Act 2002 (c. 9), s. 136(2), **Sch. 11 para. 25(2)(a)** (with s. 129); S.I. 2003/1725, art. 2(1)
- F325** Words in s. 158(5)(c) substituted (13.10.2003) by Land Registration Act 2002 (c. 9), s. 136(2), **Sch. 11 para. 25(2)(b)** (with s. 129); S.I. 2003/1725, art. 2(1)
- F326** Words in s. 158(6) substituted (13.10.2003) by Land Registration Act 2002 (c. 9), s. 136(2), **Sch. 11 para. 25(3)** (with s. 129); S.I. 2003/1725, art. 2(1)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C116** S. 158 applied (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 33(3)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(p)
- C117** S. 158(1) applied (with modifications) (4.6.1996) by S.I. 1996/1243, art. 18, **Sch. 5 para. 6(2)(b)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M56** 1972 c. 61.

### *General pipe-laying powers*

#### **159 Powers to lay pipes in streets.**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this Part, the [<sup>F327</sup>Agency] shall, for the purpose of carrying out its functions, have power—
- (a) to lay a relevant pipe in, under or over any street and to keep that pipe there;
  - (b) to inspect, maintain, adjust, repair or alter any relevant pipe which is in, under or over any street; and
  - (c) to carry out any works requisite for, or incidental to, the purposes of any works falling within paragraph (a) or (b) above, including for those purposes the following kinds of works, that is to say—
    - (i) breaking up or opening a street;
    - (ii) tunnelling or boring under a street;
    - (iii) breaking up or opening a sewer, drain or tunnel;
    - (iv) moving or removing earth and other materials.

[<sup>F328</sup>(1A) The Agency may carry out work within subsection (1)(a) to (c) if—

- (a) it thinks the work desirable having regard to the national flood and coastal erosion risk management strategies under sections 7 and 8 of the Flood and Water Management Act 2010, and
- (b) the purpose of the work is to manage a flood risk (within the meaning of that Act) from (i) the sea, or (ii) a main river.]

- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1)(c) above, the [<sup>F327</sup>Agency] shall have power to erect and keep in any street notices indicating the position of such underground accessories for its relevant pipes as may be used for controlling the flow of water in those pipes.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) The power conferred by subsection (2) above shall include power to attach any such notice as is mentioned in that subsection to any building, fence or other structure which is comprised in premises abutting on the street in question.
- (4) Until the coming into force of its repeal by the <sup>M57</sup>New Roads and Street Works Act 1991 section 20 of the <sup>M58</sup>Highways Act 1980 (works in special roads) shall have effect as if the reference in that section to a power under any enactment to lay down or erect apparatus included a reference to any power to lay any pipe which is conferred by this section.
- (5) In this section references to a relevant pipe are references to a resource main or discharge pipe and references to laying such a pipe shall include references—
- (a) to the laying of any drain or sewer for any of the purposes specified in subsection (6) below; and
  - (b) to the construction of a watercourse for any of those purposes.
- (6) The purposes mentioned in subsection (5) above are—
- (a) intercepting, treating or disposing of any foul water arising or flowing upon any land; or
  - (b) otherwise preventing the pollution—
    - (i) of any waters, whether on the surface or underground, which belong to the [<sup>F327</sup>Agency] or any water undertaker or from which the [<sup>F327</sup>Agency] or any water undertaker is authorised to take water;
    - (ii) without prejudice to sub-paragraph (i) above, of any reservoir which belongs to or is operated by the [<sup>F327</sup>Agency] or any water undertaker or which the [<sup>F327</sup>Agency] or any water undertaker is proposing to acquire or construct for the purpose of being so operated; or
    - (iii) of any underground strata from which the [<sup>F327</sup>Agency] or any water undertaker is for the time being authorised to abstract water in pursuance of a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act.
- (7) References in this section to maintaining a pipe include references to cleansing it and references to altering a pipe include references to altering its size or course, to moving or removing it and to replacing it with a pipe which is of the same description of relevant pipe as the pipe replaced.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F327** Word in s. 159 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F328** S. 159(1A) inserted (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 45** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, **art. 3(f)**; S.I. 2011/2204, **art. 3(2)** (d)

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M57** 1991 c. 22.

**M58** 1980 c. 66.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 160 Power to lay pipes in other land.

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this Part, the [<sup>F329</sup>Agency] shall, for the purpose of carrying out its functions, have power—
- to lay a relevant pipe (whether above or below the surface) in any land which is not in, under or over a street and to keep that pipe there;
  - to inspect, maintain, adjust, repair or alter any relevant pipe which is in any such land;
  - to carry out any works requisite for, or incidental to, the purposes of any works falling within paragraph (a) or (b) above.

[<sup>F330</sup>(1A) The Agency may carry out work within subsection (1)(a) to (c) if—

- it thinks the work desirable having regard to the national flood and coastal erosion risk management strategies under sections 7 and 8 of the Flood and Water Management Act 2010, and
  - the purpose of the work is to manage a flood risk (within the meaning of that Act) from (i) the sea, or (ii) a main river.]
- (2) The powers conferred by this section shall be exercisable only after reasonable notice of the proposed exercise of the power has been given to the owner and to the occupier of the land where the power is to be exercised.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4) below, in relation to any exercise of the powers conferred by this section for the purpose of laying or altering a relevant pipe, the minimum period that is capable of constituting reasonable notice for the purposes of subsection (2) above shall be deemed—
- where the power is exercised for the purpose of laying a relevant pipe otherwise than in substitution for an existing pipe of the same description, to be three months; and
  - where the power is exercised for the purpose of altering an existing pipe, to be forty-two days.
- (4) In this section references to a relevant pipe are references to a resource main or discharge pipe; and subsection (7) of section 159 above shall apply for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that section.

### Textual Amendments

**F329** Word in s. 160 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F330** S. 160(1A) inserted (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 46** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, art. 3(f); S.I. 2011/2204, art. 3(2) (d)

[<sup>F331</sup>Restoration and improvement works for controlled waters

### Textual Amendments

**F331** Ss. 161-161AB substituted for s. 161 (22.12.2009) by Water Resources Act 1991 (Amendment) (England and Wales) Regulations 2009 (S.I. 2009/3104), regs. 1(c), **5** (with reg. 7)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **161. Anti-pollution works and operations**

- (1) This section applies where it appears to the Agency that any poisonous, noxious or polluting matter or any waste matter is or has been present in, or is likely to enter, any controlled waters.
- (2) In a case where the matter appears to be or to have been present in the controlled waters, the Agency shall be entitled to carry out works and operations for any of the following purposes—
  - (a) removing or disposing of the matter;
  - (b) remedying or mitigating any pollution caused by its presence in the waters; or
  - (c) restoring (so far as it is reasonably practicable to do so) the waters, including any flora and fauna dependent on the aquatic environment of the waters, to their state immediately before the matter became present in the waters.
- (3) In a case where the matter appears to be likely to enter the controlled waters, the Agency shall be entitled to carry out works and operations for the purpose of preventing it from doing so.
- (4) The Agency shall be entitled to carry out investigations for the purpose of establishing any of the following—
  - (a) the nature of the matter,
  - (b) the source of the matter;
  - (c) the nature and effects of any pollution caused or likely to be caused by the presence of the matter; and
  - (d) the identity of any responsible persons.
- (5) Without prejudice to the power of the Agency to carry out those investigations, the powers conferred by subsection (2) or (3) shall only be exercisable in a case where—
  - (a) the Agency considers it necessary to carry out forthwith any works or operations falling within that subsection; or
  - (b) it appears to the Agency, after reasonable enquiry, that no responsible person can be found on whom to serve a works notice.
- (6) In this section “responsible person” means a person who has caused or knowingly permitted the matter—
  - (a) to be present in the controlled waters; or
  - (b) to be at a place from which it was likely, in the opinion of the Agency, to enter the controlled waters.

### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

## **161ZA. Other works and operations in respect of harm to controlled waters**

- (1) This section applies where it appears to the Agency that any controlled waters are being or have been harmed, or are likely to be harmed, by any event, process or other source of potential harm (and it is immaterial whether the source of potential harm has been identified).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In this section “harm” means any adverse impact on the condition of any hydromorphological quality element affecting the controlled waters that would be likely to prevent the achievement of the environmental objectives applicable to the controlled waters (whether by itself or in combination with other factors), other than an adverse impact caused by the entry into or presence in those waters of any poisonous, noxious or polluting matter or waste matter.
- (3) In subsection (2) “environmental objectives” and “hydromorphological quality element” have the same meaning as in the Water Framework Directive.
- (4) The Agency shall be entitled to carry out works and operations for any of the following purposes (so far as it is reasonably practicable to achieve them)—
  - (a) removing the source of potential harm;
  - (b) preventing any harm or further harm being caused to the controlled waters;
  - (c) in a case where the controlled waters are being or have been harmed—
    - (i) remedying or mitigating the effects of the harm;
    - (ii) restoring the waters, including any flora and fauna dependent on the aquatic environment of the waters, to their state immediately before any harm was caused.
- (5) The Agency shall be entitled to carry out investigations for the purpose of establishing any of the following—
  - (a) the source of any harm or potential harm to the controlled waters;
  - (b) the nature and effects of any harm caused or likely to be caused to those waters; and
  - (c) the identity of any responsible persons.
- (6) Without prejudice to the power of the Agency to carry out those investigations, the powers conferred by subsection (4) shall only be exercisable in a case where—
  - (a) the Agency considers it necessary to carry out forthwith any works or operations falling within that subsection; or
  - (b) it appears to the Agency, after reasonable enquiry, that no responsible person can be found on whom to serve a works notice.
- (7) In this section “responsible person” means a person who has caused or knowingly permitted—
  - (a) any harm to be caused to the controlled waters; or
  - (b) a source of potential harm to exist that is likely, in the opinion of the Agency, to cause harm to the controlled waters.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

**161ZB. Works and operations for improving controlled waters**

- (1) This section applies where it appears to the Agency that—
  - (a) the condition of any hydromorphological quality element affecting any controlled waters is unsatisfactory; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) it is possible to improve the hydromorphological quality element by carrying out works or operations.
- (2) For the purposes of this section the condition of a hydromorphological quality element affecting the controlled waters is unsatisfactory if (whether by itself or in combination with other factors) if it is likely to prevent the waters from achieving the applicable environmental objectives.
- (3) In this section “environmental objectives” and “hydromorphological quality element” have the same meaning as in the Water Framework Directive.
- (4) The Agency shall be entitled to carry out works and operations for the purpose of improving the condition of the hydromorphological quality element in question with a view to achieving (or contributing to the achievement of) the applicable environmental objectives.
- (5) The Agency shall be entitled to carry out investigations for the purpose of establishing why the condition of the hydromorphological quality element in question is unsatisfactory.
- (6) Without prejudice to the power of the Agency to carry out those investigations, the powers conferred by subsection (4) shall only be exercisable if it appears to the Agency that it is unable to secure that the necessary works or operations are carried out by exercising its powers under section 161 or 161ZA or by serving a works notice on any responsible person.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**  
**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

**161ZC. Sections 161 to 161ZB: supplementary**

- (1) Nothing in sections 161 to 161ZB shall entitle the Agency to impede or prevent the making of any discharge in pursuance of [<sup>F332</sup>an environmental permit] .
- (2) Where the Agency carries out any works, operations or investigations under any of the powers conferred by section 161 or 161ZA it shall, subject to subsection (3), be entitled to recover the expenses reasonably incurred in doing so from any responsible person (within the meaning of the section conferring the powers in question).
- (3) No expenses are recoverable from a person for any works, operations or investigations in respect of water from an abandoned mine or an abandoned part of a mine which that person permitted to enter any controlled waters or to reach a place from which it was likely, in the opinion of the Agency, to enter any controlled waters.
- (4) Subsection (3) does not apply to the owner or former operator of any mine or part of a mine if the mine or part in question became abandoned after 31st December 1999.
- <sup>F333</sup>(5) .....
- (6) Nothing in sections 161, 161ZA and 161ZB—
  - (a) derogates from any right of action or other remedy (whether civil or criminal) in proceedings instituted otherwise than under any of those sections; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) affects any restriction imposed by or under any other enactment, whether public local or private.
- (7) In this section—  
“expenses” includes costs;  
“mine” has the same meaning as in the Mines and Quarries Act 1954;  
“works notice” means a notice under section 161A.
- (8) In sections 161, 161ZA and 161ZB and this section “controlled waters” has the same meaning as in Part 3 of this Act and in sections 161ZA and 161ZB, and “Water Framework Directive” has the same meaning as in section 93(7) of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

- F332** Words in s. 161ZC(1) substituted (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(8)(a)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F333** S. 161ZC(5) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(m), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C118** [Ss. 161-161D](#) modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), **Sch. 1**)

### 161A. Notices requiring persons to carry out works and operations

- (1) Where it appears to the Agency that—  
(a) any poisonous, noxious or polluting matter or any waste matter is or has been present in, or is likely to enter, any controlled waters (so that section 161 applies), or  
(b) any controlled waters are being or have been harmed, or are likely to be harmed, by any event, process or other source of potential harm (so that section 161ZA applies),  
the Agency shall be entitled to serve a works notice on any responsible person.
- (2) In this section “responsible person” has the same meaning as in section 161 or 161ZA (as the case may be).
- (3) For the purposes of this section a works notice is a notice requiring the person on whom it is served to carry out such works or operations as may be specified in the notice.
- (4) The works or operations that may be so specified are works or operations which may be carried out under section 161(2) or (3) or section 161ZA(4) (as the case may be).
- (5) Where the Agency has carried out any such investigations as are mentioned in sections 161(4) or 161ZA(5) and serves a works notice on a responsible person in connection with the matters to which the investigations relate it shall (unless the notice is quashed or withdrawn) be entitled to recover from that person the costs or expenses reasonably incurred in carrying out those investigations.
- (6) The appropriate national authority may, if it thinks fit in relation to any person, give directions to the Agency as to whether or how it should exercise its powers under this section or section 161AA.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) In this section and sections 161AA and 161AB “controlled waters” has the same meaning as in Part 3 of this Act.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

**161AA. Works notices: form etc**

- (1) A works notice—
- (a) must specify the periods within which the person on whom it is served is required to do each of the things specified in the notice; and
  - (b) is without prejudice to the powers of the Agency to carry out any works or operations under section 161(5)(a) or 161ZA(6)(a).
- (2) Before serving a works notice on any person, the Agency shall reasonably endeavour to consult that person concerning the works or operations which are to be specified in the notice.
- (3) The appropriate national authority may by regulations make provision for or in connection with—
- (a) the form or content of works notices;
  - (b) requirements for consultation, before the service of a works notice, with persons other than the person on whom that notice is to be served;
  - (c) steps to be taken for the purposes of any consultation required under subsection (2) or regulations made by virtue of paragraph (b); or
  - (d) any other steps of a procedural nature which are to be taken in connection with or in consequence of the service of a works notice.
- (4) A works notice shall not be regarded as invalid or as invalidly served by reason only of a failure to comply with the requirements of subsection (2) or of regulations made by virtue of paragraph (b) of subsection (3).
- (5) In this section and section 161A, “appropriate national authority” means—
- (a) in relation to England, the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) in relation to Wales, the Welsh Ministers.
- (6) The power to make regulations under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject—
- (a) in the case of regulations made by the Secretary of State, to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament; and
  - (b) in the case of regulations made by the Welsh Ministers, to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the National Assembly for Wales.
- (7) In this section,—
- (a) paragraph (1) of section 219 does not apply; and
  - (b) in paragraph (2) of that section, references to “the Ministers” or the “the Secretary of State” shall be taken to be references to the appropriate national authority.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

**161AB. Works notices: exceptions etc**

- (1) Nothing in section 161A shall entitle the Agency to require the carrying out of any works or operations which would impede or prevent the making of any discharge in pursuance of [<sup>F334</sup>an environmental permit] .
- (2) No works notice shall be served on any person requiring him to carry out any works or operations in respect of water from an abandoned mine or an abandoned part of a mine which that person permitted to enter any controlled waters or to reach a place from which it was likely, in the opinion of the Agency, to enter any controlled waters.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply to the service of a notice on the owner or former operator of any mine or part of a mine if the mine or part in question became abandoned after 31st December 1999.

<sup>F335</sup>(4) . . . . .

- (5) In this section “mine” has the same meaning as in the Mines and Quarries Act 1954.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F334** Words in s. 161AB(1) substituted (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), [Sch. 26 para. 8\(8\)\(b\)](#) (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**F335** S. 161AB(4) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(n), [Sch. 28](#) (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

<sup>F336</sup>**161B Grant of, and compensation for, rights of entry etc.**

- (1) A works notice may require a person to carry out works or operations in relation to any land or waters notwithstanding that he is not entitled to carry out those works or operations.
- (2) Any person whose consent is required before any works or operations required by a works notice may be carried out shall grant, or join in granting, such rights in relation to any land or waters as will enable the person on whom the works notice is served to comply with any requirements imposed by the works notice.
- (3) Before serving a works notice, the Agency shall reasonably endeavour to consult every person who appears to it—
  - (a) to be the owner or occupier of any relevant land, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to be a person who might be required by subsection (2) above to grant, or join in granting, any rights,  
concerning the rights which that person may be so required to grant.
- (4) A works notice shall not be regarded as invalid, or as invalidly served, by reason only of any failure to comply with the requirements of subsection (3) above.
- (5) A person who grants, or joins in granting, any rights pursuant to subsection (2) above shall be entitled, on making an application within such period as may be prescribed and in such manner as may be prescribed to such person as may be prescribed, to be paid by the person on whom the works notice in question is served compensation of such amount as may be determined in such manner as may be prescribed.
- [<sup>F337</sup>(6) Without prejudice to the generality of the regulations that may be made by virtue of subsection (5), regulations by virtue of that subsection may—
- (a) provide for the basis on which any amount to be paid by way of compensation under this section is to be assessed;
  - (b) without prejudice to the generality of paragraph (a) above, provide for compensation under this section to be payable in respect of—
    - (i) any effect of any rights being granted, or
    - (ii) any consequence of the exercise of any rights which have been granted;
  - (c) provide for the times at which any entitlement to compensation under this section is to arise or at which any such compensation is to become payable;
  - (d) provide for the persons or bodies by whom, and the manner in which, any dispute—
    - (i) as to whether any, and (if so) how much and when, compensation under this section is payable, or
    - (ii) as to the person to or by whom it shall be paid,
is to be determined;
  - (e) provide for when or how applications may be made for compensation under this section;
  - (f) without prejudice to the generality of paragraph (d) above, provide for when or how applications may be made for the determination of any such disputes as are mentioned in that paragraph;
  - (g) without prejudice to the generality of paragraphs (e) and (f) above, prescribe the form in which any such applications as are mentioned in those paragraphs are to be made;
  - (h) make provision similar to any provision made by paragraph 8 of Schedule 19;
  - (i) make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons or circumstances;
  - (j) include such incidental, supplemental, consequential or transitional provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.]
- (7) In this section—
- “prescribed” means prescribed in regulations made by the Secretary of State;
  - “relevant land” means—
    - (a) any land or waters in relation to which the works notice in question requires, or may require, works or operations to be carried out; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any land adjoining or adjacent to that land or those waters;  
“works notice” means a works notice under section 161A above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F336** Ss. 161A-161D inserted (21.9.1995 for specified purposes, 16.3.1999 for other specified purposes and otherwise 29.4.1999) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 162** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**; S.I. 1999/803, **art. 2**; S.I. 1999/1301, **art. 2**

**F337** S. 161B(6) substituted (6.4.2008) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/3538), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 21 para. 21(6)** (with reg. 72, Sch. 4)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/2043), reg. 1(b), **Sch. 1**)

**C119** S. 161B applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 4(3)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(d)

#### <sup>F338</sup> 161C Appeals against works notices.

- (1) A person on whom a works notice is served may, within the period of twenty-one days beginning with the day on which the notice is served, appeal against the notice to the Secretary of State.
- (2) On any appeal under this section the Secretary of State—
  - (a) shall quash the notice, if he is satisfied that there is a material defect in the notice; but
  - (b) subject to that, may confirm the notice, with or without modification, or quash it.
- (3) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision with respect to—
  - (a) the grounds on which appeals under this section may be made; or
  - (b) the procedure on any such appeal.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (3) above may (among other things)—
  - (a) include provisions comparable to those in section 290 of the <sup>M59</sup>Public Health Act 1936 (appeals against notices requiring the execution of works);
  - (b) prescribe the cases in which a works notice is, or is not, to be suspended until the appeal is decided, or until some other stage in the proceedings;
  - (c) prescribe the cases in which the decision on an appeal may in some respects be less favourable to the appellant than the works notice against which he is appealing;
  - (d) prescribe the cases in which the appellant may claim that a works notice should have been served on some other person and prescribe the procedure to be followed in those cases;
  - (e) make provision as respects—
    - (i) the particulars to be included in the notice of appeal;
    - (ii) the persons on whom notice of appeal is to be served and the particulars, if any, which are to accompany the notice; or
    - (iii) the abandonment of an appeal.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In this section “works notice” means a works notice under section 161A above.
- (6) This section is subject to section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals).

#### Textual Amendments

**F338** Ss. 161A-161D inserted (21.9.1995 for specified purposes, 16.3.1999 for other specified purposes and otherwise 29.4.1999) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 162** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**; S.I. 1999/803, **art. 2**; S.I. 1999/1301, **art. 2**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by **The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011** (S.I. 2011/2043), reg. 1(b), **Sch. 1**)
- C120** S. 161C: power to delegate functions conferred (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, **s. 114(2)(a)(v)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- C121** S. 161C applied (with modifications) (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003** (c. 37), **ss. 4(3)(b)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(d)

#### Marginal Citations

**M59** 1936 c. 49.

### <sup>F339</sup> 161D Consequences of not complying with a works notice.

- (1) If a person on whom the Agency serves a works notice fails to comply with any of the requirements of the notice, he shall be guilty of an offence.
- (2) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) above shall be liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or to a fine not exceeding £20,000 or to both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine or to both.
- (3) If a person on whom a works notice has been served fails to comply with any of the requirements of the notice, the Agency may do what that person was required to do and may recover from him any costs or expenses reasonably incurred by the Agency in doing it.
- (4) If the Agency is of the opinion that proceedings for an offence under subsection (1) above would afford an ineffectual remedy against a person who has failed to comply with the requirements of a works notice, the Agency may take proceedings in the High Court for the purpose of securing compliance with the notice.
- (5) In this section “works notice” means a works notice under section 161A above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F339** Ss. 161A-161D inserted (21.9.1995 for specified purposes, 16.3.1999 for other specified purposes and otherwise 29.4.1999) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 162** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1995/1983, **art. 3**; S.I. 1999/803, **art. 2**; S.I. 1999/1301, **art. 2**



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C118** Ss. 161-161D modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2043\)](#), reg. 1(b), [Sch. 1](#))

**162 Other powers to deal with foul water and pollution.**

- (1) Without prejudice to the powers conferred by [F340sections 161 to 161D] above and subsections (2) and (3) below, the [F341Agency] shall have power, on any land—
- (a) which belongs to the [F341Agency]; or
  - (b) over or in which the [F341Agency] has acquired the necessary easements or rights,

to construct and maintain drains, sewers, watercourses, catchpits and other works for the purpose of intercepting, treating or disposing of any foul water arising or flowing on that land or of otherwise preventing any such pollution as is mentioned in section 159(6)(b) above.

- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this Part, the [F341Agency] shall, for the purpose of carrying out its functions, have power—
- (a) to carry out in a street all such works as are requisite for securing that the water in any relevant waterworks is not polluted or otherwise contaminated; and
  - (b) to carry out any works requisite for, or incidental to, the purposes of any works falling within paragraph (a) above, including for those purposes the following kinds of works, that is to say—
    - (i) breaking up or opening a street;
    - (ii) tunnelling or boring under a street;
    - (iii) breaking up or opening a sewer, drain or tunnel;
    - (iv) moving or removing earth and other materials;

and the provisions of section 159 above shall, so far as applicable, have effect in relation to the powers conferred by this subsection as they have effect in relation to the powers conferred by subsection (1) of that section.

- (3) Subject to the following provisions of this Part, the [F341Agency] shall, for the purpose of carrying out its functions, have power—
- (a) to carry out on any land which is not in, under or over a street all such works as are requisite for securing that the water in any relevant waterworks is not polluted or otherwise contaminated; and
  - (b) to carry out any works requisite for, or incidental to, the purposes of any works falling within paragraph (a) above;

and the provisions of section 160 above shall, so far as applicable, have effect in relation to the powers conferred by this subsection as they have effect in relation to the powers conferred by subsection (1) of that section.

- (4) Without prejudice to the provisions of sections 178 to 184 below, nothing in subsection (1) above shall authorise the [F341Agency], without the consent of the navigation authority in question, to intercept or take any water which a navigation authority are authorised to take or use for the purposes of their undertaking.

- (5) Any dispute as to whether any consent for the purposes of subsection (4) above is being unreasonably withheld shall be referred to the arbitration of a single arbitrator to be

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

appointed by agreement between the parties to the dispute or, in default of agreement, by the President of the Institution of Civil Engineers.

(6) In this section—

“relevant waterworks” means any waterworks which contain water which is or may be used by a water undertaker for providing a supply of water to any premises;

“service pipe” and “water main” have the same meanings as in the <sup>M60</sup>Water Industry Act 1991;

“waterworks” includes any water main, resource main, service pipe or discharge pipe and any spring, well, adit, borehole, service reservoir or tank.

#### Textual Amendments

**F340** Words in s. 162(1) substituted (29.4.1999) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 163** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1999/1301, **art. 2**

**F341** Word in s.162 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M60** 1991 c. 56.

### *Powers to discharge water*

#### **163 Discharges for works purposes.**

(1) Subject to the following provisions of this section and to section 164 below, where the [<sup>F342</sup>Agency]—

(a) is carrying out, or is about to carry out, the construction, alteration, repair, cleaning, or examination of any reservoir, well, borehole or other work belonging to or used by the [<sup>F342</sup>Agency] for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying out of any of its functions; or

(b) is exercising or about to exercise any power conferred by section 159, 160 or 162(2) or (3) above,

the [<sup>F342</sup>Agency] may cause the water in any relevant pipe or in any such reservoir, well, borehole or other work to be discharged into any available watercourse.

(2) Nothing in this section shall authorise any discharge which—

(a) damages or injuriously affects the works or property of any railway company or navigation authority; or

(b) floods or damages any highway.

(3) If the [<sup>F342</sup>Agency] fails to take all necessary steps to secure that any water discharged by it under this section is as free as may be reasonably practicable from—

(a) mud and silt;

(b) solid, polluting, offensive or injurious substances; and

(c) any substances prejudicial to fish or spawn, or to spawning beds or food of fish,

it shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) In this section—

“railway company” means the British Railways Board, [<sup>F343</sup>Transport for London or any subsidiary (within the meaning of the Greater London Authority Act 1999) of Transport for London,] or any other person authorised by any enactment, or by any order, rule or regulation made under any enactment, to construct, work or carry on a railway; and

“relevant pipe” has the same meaning as in section 159 above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F342** Words in s. 163 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F343** Words in s. 163(4) substituted (15.7.2003) by The Transport for London (Consequential Provisions) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1615), art. 1(1), **Sch. 1 para. 16(2)**

### 164 Consents for certain discharges under section 163.

(1) Except in an emergency, no discharge through any pipe the diameter of which exceeds two hundred and twenty-nine millimetres shall be made under section 163 above except with such consent as may be prescribed.

(2) Where the [<sup>F344</sup>Agency] makes an application to any person for a consent for the purposes of this section—

(a) that application shall be accompanied or supplemented by all such information as that person may reasonably require; and

(b) the [<sup>F344</sup>Agency] shall serve a copy of the application, and of any consent given on that application, on every person who—

(i) is registered with the [<sup>F344</sup>Agency] in respect of any premises which are within three miles of the place where the discharge to which the application relates is proposed to be made and are not upstream from that place; and

(ii) has not agreed in writing that he need not be served with such a copy;

but, subject to subsection (4) below and without prejudice to the effect (if any) of any other contravention of the requirements of this section in relation to such an application, a failure to provide information in pursuance of the obligation to supplement such an application shall not invalidate the application.

(3) Subject to subsection (4) below, an application for a consent for the purposes of this section shall be determined—

(a) in the case of an application with respect to a particular discharge, before the end of the period of seven days beginning with the day after the application is made; and

(b) in any other case, before the end of the period of three months beginning with that day;

and, subject to that subsection, where an application for any consent is required to be determined within the period specified in paragraph (a) above and is not so determined, the consent applied for shall be deemed to have been given unconditionally.

(4) Where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the [Agency], having made an application to any person for a consent for the purposes of this section, has failed to comply with its obligation under subsection (2)(a) above to supplement that application with information required by that person; and
- (b) that requirement was made by that person at such a time before the end of the period within which he is required to determine the application as gave the [<sup>F344</sup>Agency] a reasonable opportunity to provide the required information within that period,
- that person may delay his determination of the application until a reasonable time after the required information is provided.
- (5) A consent for the purposes of this section may relate to a particular discharge or to discharges of a particular description and may be made subject to such reasonable conditions as may be specified by the person giving it; but a consent for those purposes shall not be unreasonably withheld.
- (6) Any dispute as to whether a consent for the purposes of this section should be given or withheld, or as to whether the conditions to which any such consent is made subject are reasonable, shall be referred to the arbitration of a single arbitrator appointed by agreement between the parties to the dispute or, in default of agreement, by the President of the Institution of Civil Engineers.
- (7) Where any discharge under section 163 above is made in an emergency without the consent which, if there were no emergency, would be required by virtue of this section, the [<sup>F344</sup>Agency] shall, as soon as practicable after making the discharge, serve a notice which—
- (a) states that the discharge has been made; and
- (b) gives such particulars of the discharge and of the emergency as the persons served with the notice might reasonably require,
- on every person on whom the [<sup>F344</sup>Agency] would have been required to serve the application for that consent or any copy of that application.
- (8) If the [<sup>F344</sup>Agency] contravenes, without reasonable excuse, any of the requirements of this section or any condition of a consent given for the purposes of this section, it shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.
- (9) Nothing in this section shall require any consent to be obtained, or any notice to be served, in respect of any discharge if the requirements of section 34 of the <sup>M61</sup>Water Act 1945 (temporary discharges into watercourses) in relation to that discharge had been satisfied before 1st September 1989.

#### Textual Amendments

**F344** Words in s. 164 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M61** 1945 c. 42.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Flood defence and drainage works*

#### **165 [F345 General powers to carry out works]**

[F346] (1) The Agency may—

- (a) carry out flood risk management work within subsection (1D)(a) to (f) if Conditions 1 and 2 are satisfied;
- (b) carry out flood risk management work within subsection (1D)(g) or (h) if Condition 1 is satisfied.

(1A) Condition 1 is that the Agency considers the work desirable having regard to the national flood and coastal erosion risk management strategies under sections 7 and 8 of the Flood and Water Management Act 2010.

(1B) Condition 2 is that the purpose of the work is to manage a flood risk (within the meaning of that Act) from—

- (a) the sea, or
- (b) a main river.

(1C) In subsection (1B)(b) the reference to a main river includes a reference to a lake, pond or other area of water which flows into a main river.

(1D) In this section “flood risk management work” means anything done—

- (a) to maintain existing works (including buildings or structures) including cleansing, repairing or otherwise maintaining the efficiency of an existing watercourse or drainage work;
- (b) to operate existing works (such as sluiceways or pumps);
- (c) to improve existing works (including buildings or structures) including anything done to deepen, widen, straighten or otherwise improve an existing watercourse, to remove or alter mill dams, weirs or other obstructions to watercourses, or to raise, widen or otherwise improve a drainage work;
- (d) to construct or repair new works (including buildings, structures, watercourses, drainage works and machinery);
- (e) for the purpose of maintaining or restoring natural processes;
- (f) to monitor, investigate or survey a location or a natural process;
- (g) to reduce or increase the level of water in a place;
- (h) to alter or remove works.]

(2) The [F347 Agency] shall also have power<sup>F348</sup>... to maintain, improve or construct drainage works for the purpose of defence against sea water or tidal water; and that power shall be exercisable both above and below the low-water mark.

(3) The [F347 Agency] may construct all such works and do all such things in the sea or in any estuary as may, in its opinion, be necessary to secure an adequate outfall for a main river.

[F349] (4) The Agency may by agreement with any person carry out, improve or maintain, at that person’s expense, any drainage works which that person is entitled to carry out, improve or maintain; but for the purposes of this subsection the expense to be borne by that person shall not include such part (if any) of the amount of any grant made under section 47 of the Environment Act 1995 (grants to the new Agencies) as the Agency decides (subject to any terms on which the grant is made) to allocate for the works in question.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) The [<sup>F347</sup>Agency] may enter into an agreement with any local authority or with any navigation authority for the carrying out by that authority, on such terms as to payment or otherwise as may be specified in the agreement, of any work <sup>F350</sup>... which the [<sup>F347</sup>Agency] is authorised to carry out [<sup>F351</sup>under this section].
- (6) Nothing in subsections (1) to (3) above authorises any person to enter on the land of any person except for the purpose of maintaining existing works.
- (7) In this section “watercourse” has the same meaning as in Part IV of this Act <sup>F352</sup>...

#### Textual Amendments

- F345** S. 165 heading substituted (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 47(6)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, art. 3(f); S.I. 2011/2204, art. 3(2)(d)
- F346** S. 165(1)-(1D) substituted for s. 165(1) (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 47(2)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, art. 3(f); S.I. 2011/2204, art. 3(2)(d)
- F347** Words in s. 165 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F348** Words in s. 165(2) omitted (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by virtue of Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 47(3)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, art. 3(f); S.I. 2011/2204, art. 3(2)(d)
- F349** S. 165(4) substituted (17.3.2004 for E., 1.4.2004 for W.) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 69(2)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 2(a) (with Sch. 3 para. 7); S.I. 2004/910, art. 2(1)(b)
- F350** Words in s. 165(5) omitted (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by virtue of Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 47(4)(a)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, art. 3(f); S.I. 2011/2204, art. 3(2)(d)
- F351** Words in s. 165(5) added (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 47(4)(b)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, art. 3(f); S.I. 2011/2204, art. 3(2)(d)
- F352** Words in s. 165(7) omitted (19.7.2011 for E., 1.10.2011 for W.) by virtue of Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 47(5)** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/1770, art. 3(f); S.I. 2011/2204, art. 3(2)(d)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C122** S. 165 excluded (01.12.1991) by Land Drainage Act 1991 (c. 59, SIF 73:1), **ss. 11(2)**, 76(2).

### 166 Power to carry out works for purpose of providing flood warning system.

- (1) Without prejudice to its other powers by virtue of [<sup>F353</sup>section 37 of the 1995 Act (incidental general powers of the Agency)], Part IV of this Act and this Part, the [<sup>F354</sup>Agency] shall have power—
- (a) to provide and operate flood warning systems;
  - (b) to provide, install and maintain apparatus required for the purposes of such systems;
  - (c) to carry out any other engineering or building operations so required.
- (2) Subsection (1) above shall not be construed as authorising, on the part of the [<sup>F354</sup>Agency], any act or omission which, apart from that subsection, would be

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

actionable at the suit of any person on any grounds other than a limitation imposed by law on the capacity of the [<sup>F354</sup>Agency] by virtue of its constitution.

(3) The [<sup>F354</sup>Agency] may exercise the powers conferred by subsection (1)(b) or (c) above in an area in Scotland as if—

(a) its functions in relation to the areas of the regional flood defence committees whose areas are adjacent to Scotland were functions in relation to that area in Scotland; and

(b) that area in Scotland were included in the areas of each of those committees; but the powers conferred by this subsection are subject (except in the case of a power to maintain apparatus) to prior consultation with the local authority (within the meaning of section 1 of the <sup>M62</sup>Flood Prevention (Scotland) Act 1961) for the area in Scotland in question.

[<sup>F355</sup>(4) In this section—

“flood warning system” means any system whereby, for the purpose of providing warning of any danger of flooding, information with respect to—

(a) rainfall, as measured at a particular place within a particular period; or

(b) the level or flow of any inland water, or part of an inland water, at a particular time; or

(c) other matters appearing to the Agency to be relevant for that purpose, is obtained and transmitted, whether automatically or otherwise, with or without provision for carrying out calculations based on such information and for transmitting the results of those calculations;

“inland water” means any of the following in any part of Great Britain, that is to say—

(a) any river, stream or other watercourse, whether natural or artificial and whether tidal or not;

(b) any lake or pond, whether natural or artificial, and any reservoir or dock; and

(c) any channel, creek, bay, estuary or arm of the sea;

“rainfall” includes any fall of snow, hail or sleet.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F353** Words in s. 166(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 164** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F354** Words in s. 166 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F355** S. 166(4) substituted (17.3.2004 for E., 1.4.2004 for W.) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 69(3), 105(3)**; S.I. 2004/641, **art. 2(a)** (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**); S.I. 2004/910, **art. 2(1)(b)**

#### Marginal Citations

**M62** 1961 c. 41.

### 167 Power to dispose of spoil in connection with flood defence works.

(1) Subject to subsection (2) below, the [<sup>F356</sup>Agency] may—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) without making payment for it, appropriate and dispose of any matter removed in the course of the carrying out of any work for widening, deepening or dredging any watercourse; and
  - (b) deposit any matter so removed on the banks of the watercourse, or on such width of land adjoining the watercourse as is sufficient to enable the matter in question to be removed and deposited by mechanical means in one operation.
- (2) Subsection (1) above shall not authorise the deposit of any matter if the matter deposited would constitute a statutory nuisance within the meaning of Part III of the <sup>M63</sup>Environmental Protection Act 1990.
- (3) The [<sup>F356</sup>Agency] and the council of any district or London borough [<sup>F357</sup> or Welsh county or county borough] may enter into an agreement providing—
- (a) for the disposal by the council of any matter removed as mentioned in subsection (1) above; and
  - (b) for the payment by the [<sup>F356</sup>Agency] to the council, in respect of the disposal of the matter by the council, of such sum as may be provided by the agreement.
- (4) In this section “banks” and “watercourse” have the same meanings as in Part IV of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F356** Words in s.167 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F357** Words in s. 167(3) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 22(5), **Sch. 11 para. 3(4)** (with ss. 54(4)(7), 55(5), **Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)**); S.I. 1996/396, art. 3, **Sch. 1**

#### Marginal Citations

**M63** 1990 c. 43.

### *Compulsory works orders*

#### 168 Compulsory works orders.

- (1) Where the [<sup>F358</sup>Agency] is proposing, for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying out of any of its functions—
- (a) to carry out any engineering or building operations; or
  - (b) to discharge water into any inland waters or underground strata,
- the [<sup>F358</sup>Agency] may apply to either of the Ministers for an order under this section (“a compulsory works order”).
- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this section, the Ministers shall each have power, on an application under subsection (1) above, by order made by statutory instrument—
- (a) to confer such compulsory powers; and
  - (b) to grant such authority,
- as he considers necessary or expedient for the purpose of enabling any engineering or building operations or discharges of water to be carried out or made for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying out of the functions with respect to which the application was made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Schedule 19 to this Act shall have effect with respect to applications for compulsory works orders and with respect to such orders.
- (4) Subject to the provisions of Schedule 19 to this Act, a compulsory works order may—
- (a) without prejudice to section 154 above, confer power to acquire compulsorily any land, including—
    - (i) power to acquire interests in and rights over land by the creation of new rights and interests; and
    - (ii) power, by the compulsory acquisition by the [F358 Agency] of any rights over land which is to be or has been acquired by the [F358 Agency], to extinguish any such rights;
  - (b) apply for the purposes of the order, either with or without modifications, any of the relevant provisions of this Part which do not apply for those purposes apart from by virtue of this paragraph;
  - (c) make any authority granted by the order subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order;
  - (d) amend or repeal any local statutory provision;
  - (e) contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the Minister making the order considers appropriate;
- and section 156(1) above shall apply in relation to the powers conferred by virtue of this section as it applies in relation to the power conferred by section 154 above.
- (5) Without prejudice to any duty imposed by virtue of section 184 below, where—
- (a) either of the Ministers makes a compulsory works order authorising the [F358 Agency] to carry out works for or in connection with the construction or operation of a reservoir or conferring compulsory powers for that purpose on the [F358 Agency]; and
  - (b) it appears to him that the works to be carried out may permanently affect the area in which they are situated and are not primarily intended to benefit the inhabitants of that area,
- he may include in the order provision with respect to facilities for recreation or other leisure-time occupation for the benefit of those inhabitants.
- (6) Nothing in any compulsory works order shall exempt the [F358 Agency] from any restriction imposed by Chapter II of Part II of this Act.
- (7) It is hereby declared that a compulsory works order may grant authority for discharges of water by the [F358 Agency] where the [F358 Agency] has no power to take water, or to require discharges to be made, from the inland waters or other source from which the discharges authorised by the order are intended to be made; but nothing in so much of any such order as grants authority for any discharges of water shall have the effect of conferring any such power.
- (8) In this section the reference to the relevant provisions of this Part is a reference to the provisions of this Part except sections 155 to 158 and 165 to 167 above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F358** Words in s. 168 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER II

### POWERS OF ENTRY

#### 169 Powers of entry for enforcement purposes.

- (1) Any person designated in writing for the purpose by either of the Ministers or by the [<sup>F359</sup>Agency] may—
- (a) enter any premises or vessel for the purpose of ascertaining whether any provision of an enactment to which this section applies, of any subordinate legislation or other instrument made by virtue of any such enactment or of any byelaws made by the [<sup>F359</sup>Agency] is being or has been contravened; and
  - (b) carry out such inspections, measurements and tests on any premises or vessel entered by that person or of any articles found on any such premises or vessel, and take away such samples of water or effluent or of any land or articles, as that Minister or the [<sup>F359</sup>Agency]—
    - (i) considers appropriate for the purpose mentioned in paragraph (a) above; and
    - (ii) has authorised that person to carry out or take away.
- [<sup>F360</sup>(2) The powers conferred by subsection (1) above in relation to any premises shall include power, in order to obtain information for the purpose mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above—
- (a) to carry out experimental borings or other works on those premises; and
  - (b) to install and keep monitoring and other apparatus there.]
- (3) [<sup>F361</sup>Subject to subsection (4) below,]this section applies to any enactment contained in this Act and to any other enactment under or for the purposes of which the [<sup>F359</sup>Agency] carries out functions.
- [<sup>F362</sup>(4) The powers conferred by this section shall not have effect for the purposes of any of the Agency's pollution control functions, within the meaning of section 108 of the 1995 Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F359** Words in s. 169 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F360** S. 169(2) substituted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 71, 105(3)**; S.I. 2004/641, **art. 3(r)** (with **Sch. 3 paras. 67**)
- F361** Words in s. 169(3) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 165** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F362** S. 169(4) added (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 165** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### 170 Power of entry for certain works purposes.

- (1) Any person designated in writing for the purpose by the [<sup>F363</sup>Agency] may enter any premises for any of the purposes specified in subsection (2) below.
- (2) The purposes mentioned in subsection (1) above are—
- (a) the carrying out of any survey or tests for the purpose of determining—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) whether it is appropriate and practicable for the [Agency] to exercise any relevant works power; or
  - (ii) how any such power should be exercised;
- (b) the exercise of any such power.
- (3) The power by virtue of subsection (1) above of a person designated by the [F363 Agency] to enter any premises for the purposes of carrying out any survey or tests shall include power—
  - (a) to carry out experimental borings or other works for the purpose of ascertaining the nature of the sub-soil; and
  - (b) to take away and analyse such samples of water or effluent or of any land or articles as the [Agency] considers necessary for the purpose of determining either of the matters mentioned in subsection (2)(a) above and has authorised that person to take away and analyse.
- (4) In this section “relevant works power” means any power conferred by any of the provisions of sections 159, 160, 162(2) and (3) and 163 above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F363** Words in s. 170 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### 171 Power to carry out surveys and to search for water.

- (1) Without prejudice to the rights and powers conferred by the other provisions of this Chapter, any person designated in writing under this section by the [F364 Agency] may enter any premises for any of the purposes specified in subsection (2) below.
- (2) The purposes mentioned in subsection (1) above are the carrying out of any survey or tests for the purpose of determining—
  - (a) whether it would be appropriate for the [F364 Agency] to acquire any land, or any interest or right in or over land, for purposes connected with the carrying out of its functions; or
  - (b) whether it would be appropriate for the [F364 Agency] to apply for an order under section 168 above and what compulsory powers it would be appropriate to apply for under that section.
- (3) The power by virtue of subsection (1) above of a person designated under this section to enter any premises for the purpose of carrying out any survey or tests shall include power—
  - (a) to carry out experimental borings or other works for the purpose of ascertaining the nature of the sub-soil, the presence of underground water in the sub-soil or the quantity or quality of any such water;
  - (b) to install and keep monitoring or other apparatus on the premises for the purpose of obtaining the information on which any such determination as is mentioned in subsection (2) above may be made; and
  - (c) to take away and analyse such samples of water or of any land or articles as the [F364 Agency] considers necessary for any of the purposes so mentioned and has authorised that person to take away and analyse.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The powers conferred by this section shall not be exercised in any case for purposes connected with the determination of—
- (a) whether, where or how a reservoir should be constructed; or
  - (b) whether, where or how a borehole should be sunk for the purpose of abstracting water from or discharging water into any underground strata,
- unless the Secretary of State has, in accordance with subsection (5) below, given his written authorisation in relation to that case for the exercise of those powers for those purposes.
- (5) The Secretary of State shall not give his authorisation for the purposes of subsection (4) above unless—
- (a) he is satisfied that notice of the proposal to apply for the authorisation has been given to the owner and to the occupier of the premises in question; and
  - (b) he has considered any representation or objections with respect to the proposed exercise of the powers under this section which—
    - (i) have been duly made to him by the owner or occupier of those premises, within the period of fourteen days beginning with the day after the giving of the notice; and
    - (ii) have not been withdrawn.

#### Textual Amendments

**F364** Words in s. 171 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

## 172 Powers of entry for other purposes.

- (1) Any person designated in writing for the purpose by either of the Ministers or the [<sup>F365</sup>Agency] may enter any premises or vessel for the purpose of—
- (a) determining whether, and if so in what manner, any power or duty conferred or imposed on either of the Ministers or on the [<sup>F365</sup>Agency] by virtue of any enactment to which this section applies (including a power of either or both of the Ministers to make subordinate legislation) should be exercised or, as the case may be, performed; or
  - (b) exercising or performing any power or duty which is so conferred or imposed.
- (2) Any person designated in writing for the purpose by either of the Ministers or the [<sup>F365</sup>Agency] may—
- (a) carry out such inspections, measurements and tests on any premises or vessel entered by that person under this section or of any articles found on any such premises or vessel; and
  - (b) take away such samples of water or effluent or of any land or articles, as that Minister or the [<sup>F365</sup>Agency] considers appropriate for any purpose mentioned in subsection (1) above and has authorised that person to carry out or take away.
- (3) [<sup>F366</sup>Subject to subsection (3A) below,]the powers which by virtue of subsections (1) and (2) above are conferred in relation to any premises for the purpose of enabling either of the Ministers or the [<sup>F365</sup>Agency] to determine whether or in what manner to exercise or perform any power or duty conferred or imposed on him or it by or under

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the water pollution provisions of this Act shall include power, in order to obtain the information on which that determination may be made—

- (a) to carry out experimental borings or other works on those premises; and
- (b) to install and keep monitoring and other apparatus there.

[<sup>F367</sup>(3A) The powers conferred by this section shall not have effect for the purposes of any of the Agency's pollution control functions, within the meaning of section 108 of the 1995 Act.]

(4) This section applies to any enactment contained in this Act and to any other enactment under or for the purposes of which the [<sup>F365</sup>Agency] carries out functions.

#### Textual Amendments

- F365** Words in s. 172 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F366** Words in s. 172(3) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 166** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F367** S. 172(3A) added (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 166** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### 173 Powers of entry: supplemental provisions.

Schedule 20 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the powers of entry and related powers which are conferred by the preceding provisions of this Chapter.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C123** S. 173 applied (with modifications) (2.7.2009) by **Broads Authority Act 2009 (c. i), s. 24(3)** (with ss. 2(3), 16(3), 41(4), 42, **Sch. 6**)
- C124** S. 173 applied (with modifications) (2.7.2009) by **Broads Authority Act 2009 (c. i), s. 17(3)** (with ss. 2(3), 16(3), 42, **Sch. 6**)

#### 174 Impersonation of persons exercising powers of entry.

(1) A person who, without having been designated or authorised for the purpose by the [<sup>F368</sup>Agency], purports to be entitled to enter any premises or vessel in exercise of a power exercisable in pursuance of any such designation or authorisation shall be guilty of an offence and [<sup>F369</sup>liable—].

- [<sup>F369</sup>(a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.]

(2) For the purposes of this section it shall be immaterial, where a person purports to be entitled to enter any premises or vessel, that the power which that person purports to be entitled to exercise does not exist, or would not be exercisable, even if that person had been designated or authorised by the [<sup>F368</sup>Agency].



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F368** Words in s.174 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**
- F369** S. 174(1)(a)(b) and the word preceding them substituted (1.4.1996) for words by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 167** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### CHAPTER III

#### PROVISIONS SUPPLEMENTAL TO LAND AND WORK POWERS

##### *Vesting of pipes in the [<sup>F370</sup>Agency]*

#### Textual Amendments

- F370** Word in s. 175 cross-heading substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### **175 Vesting of pipes in the [<sup>F371</sup>Agency].**

- (1) Subject to any provision to the contrary contained in an agreement between the [<sup>F371</sup>Agency] and the person in whom an interest in the pipe is or is to be vested, every pipe which—
- (a) is a relevant pipe for the purposes of section 159 or 160 above; and
  - (b) has been laid, in exercise of any power conferred by Chapter I of this Part or otherwise, by the [<sup>F371</sup>Agency],
- shall vest in the [<sup>F371</sup>Agency].
- (2) Subsection (1) above is without prejudice to the vesting of anything in the [<sup>F371</sup>Agency] by virtue of the exercise by the [<sup>F371</sup>Agency] of any power to acquire property by agreement or compulsorily.

#### Textual Amendments

- F371** Word in s. 175 and the sidenote substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

##### *Offence of interference with works etc.*

#### **176 Offence of interference with works etc.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, if any person without the consent of the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency]—
- (a) intentionally or recklessly interferes with any resource main or other pipe vested in the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency] or with any structure, installation or apparatus belonging to the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency]; or



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) by any act or omission negligently interferes with any such main or other pipe or with any such structure, installation or apparatus so as to damage it or so as to have an effect on its use or operation,  
that person shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.
- (2) A person shall not be guilty of an offence under subsection (1) above—
- (a) by reason of anything done in an emergency to prevent loss or damage to persons or property; or
- (b) by reason of his opening or closing the stopcock fitted to a service pipe by means of which water is supplied to any premises by a water undertaker if—
- (i) he has obtained the consent of every consumer whose supply is affected by the opening or closing of that stopcock or, as the case may be, of every other consumer whose supply is so affected; and
- (ii) in the case of opening a stopcock, the stopcock was closed otherwise than by the undertaker.
- (3) Any person who without the consent of the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency]—
- (a) attaches any pipe or apparatus to any resource main or other pipe vested in the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency]; or
- (b) subject to subsection (4) below, uses any pipe or apparatus which has been attached or altered in contravention of this section,  
shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.
- (4) In proceedings against any person for an offence by virtue of paragraph (b) of subsection (3) above it shall be a defence for that person to show that he did not know, and had no grounds for suspecting, that the pipe or apparatus in question had been attached or altered as mentioned in that subsection.
- (5) An offence under subsection (1) or (3) above shall constitute a breach of a duty owed to the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency]; and any such breach of duty which causes the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency] to sustain loss or damage shall be actionable at the suit of the [<sup>F372</sup>Agency].
- (6) The amount recoverable by virtue of subsection (5) above from a person who has committed an offence under subsection (3) above shall include such amount as may be reasonable in respect of any water wasted, misused or improperly consumed in consequence of the commission of the offence.
- (7) In this section “service pipe” and “stopcock” have the same meanings as in the <sup>M64</sup>Water Industry Act 1991, and “consumer” has the same meaning as in Part III of that Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F372** Words in s. 176 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M64** 1991 c. 56.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Compensation etc. in respect of exercise of works powers*

**177 Compensation etc. in respect of exercise of works powers.**

Schedule 21 to this Act shall have effect for making provision for imposing obligations as to the payment of compensation in respect of the exercise of the powers conferred on the [<sup>F373</sup>Agency] by sections 159 to 167 above and otherwise for minimising the damage caused by the exercise of those powers.

**Textual Amendments**

**F373** Word in s. 177 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Protective provisions*

**178 Protection for particular undertakings.**

Schedule 22 to this Act shall have effect for the protection of particular undertakings in connection with the carrying out of works and other activities by the [<sup>F374</sup>Agency].

**Textual Amendments**

**F374** Word in s. 178 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**179 Protective provisions in respect of flood defence works and watercourses etc.**

- (1) Nothing in this Act shall confer power on any person to do anything, except with the consent of the person who so uses them, which interferes—
  - (a) with any sluices, floodgates, groynes, sea defences or other works used by any person for draining, preserving or improving any land under any local statutory provision; or
  - (b) with any such works used by any person for irrigating any land.
- (2) Where the [<sup>F375</sup>Agency] proposes, otherwise than in exercise of any compulsory powers—
  - (a) to construct or alter any such inland waters in any internal drainage district as do not form part of a main river; or
  - (b) to construct or alter any works on or in any such inland waters,
 the [<sup>F375</sup>Agency] shall consult the internal drainage board for that district before doing so.
- (3) A consent for the purposes of subsection (1) above may be given subject to reasonable conditions but shall not be unreasonably withheld.
- (4) Any dispute—
  - (a) as to whether anything done or proposed to be done interferes or will interfere as mentioned in subsection (1) above;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) as to whether any consent for the purposes of this section is being unreasonably withheld; or
- (c) as to whether any condition subject to which any such consent has been given was reasonable,

shall be referred to the arbitration of a single arbitrator to be appointed by agreement between the parties or, in default of agreement, by the President of the Institution of Civil Engineers.

- (5) The provisions of this section shall be without prejudice to the provisions of Schedule 22 to this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F375** Words in s. 179 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C125** S. 179 applied (01.12.1991) by **Land Drainage Act 1991** (c. 59, SIF 73:1), **ss. 67(2), 76(2)**.

### 180 Power of navigation authorities etc to divert the Authority's watercourses.

- (1) Where any watercourses under the control of the [<sup>F376</sup>Agency] pass under or interfere with, or with the improvement or alteration of, any river, canal, dock, harbour, basin or other work (including any towing-path adjacent thereto) which belongs to or is under the jurisdiction of any relevant authority, the relevant authority may, at their own expense and on substituting for those watercourses other equally effective watercourses—
  - (a) take up, divert or alter the level of those watercourses; and
  - (b) do all such matters and things as may be necessary in connection with the works authorised to be done by them under this section.
- (2) If any question arises under this section between the [<sup>F376</sup>Agency] and any relevant authority as to whether any watercourses substituted or proposed to be substituted by the relevant authority for any existing watercourses are as effective as the existing watercourses, that question shall be referred to the arbitration of a single arbitrator appointed by agreement between the parties or, in default of agreement, by the President of the Institution of Civil Engineers on the application of either party.
- (3) In this section—
  - “relevant authority” means any navigation authority, harbour authority or conservancy authority; and
  - “watercourse” has the same meaning as in Part IV of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F376** Words in s.180 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 181 Works in tidal lands etc.

- (1) Nothing in any of the provisions of this Part relating to any relevant works power shall authorise the [<sup>F377</sup>Agency] to carry out any works at any place below the place to which the tide flows at mean high water springs, except in accordance with such plans and sections, and subject to such restrictions, as may, before the works are commenced, have been approved by the Secretary of State.
- (2) An approval for the purposes of subsection (1) above shall be given to the [<sup>F377</sup>Agency] by the service on the [<sup>F377</sup>Agency] of a notice containing the approval.
- (3) Section 38 of the <sup>M65</sup>Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975 (tidal lands etc.) shall apply to any proposed construction, alteration or extension under section 156 above as it applies to any proposed construction, alteration or extension under that Act.
- (4) Section 74 of the <sup>M66</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 (application to Crown and tidal lands), so far as it relates to lands below the high-water mark of ordinary spring tides shall apply, as it applies in relation to that Act, to the flood defence provisions of this Act.
- (5) In subsection (1) above the reference to a relevant works power is a reference to a power conferred by any of sections 159, 160, 162(2) and (3) and 163 above.

### Textual Amendments

**F377** Words in s. 181 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### Marginal Citations

**M65** 1975 c. 51.  
**M66** 1991 c. 59.

## 182 Mineral rights.

Schedule 23 to this Act (which makes provision with respect to the acquisition of mineral rights by the [<sup>F378</sup>Agency] and with respect to the working of mines and minerals where pipes, sewers or other related works are affected) shall have effect and, in the case of the compulsory acquisition of land by virtue of this Act, shall have effect instead of Schedule 2 to the <sup>M67</sup>Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (mineral rights etc. in relation to compulsory purchase orders).

### Textual Amendments

**F378** Word in s. 182 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

### Marginal Citations

**M67** 1981 c. 67.

## 183 Saving for planning controls etc.

- (1) Without prejudice to the operation of section 90 of the <sup>M68</sup>Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (planning permission deemed to be granted in certain cases) in relation to

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

any provision made by or under this Act or any other enactment which by virtue of this Act or the <sup>M69</sup>Water Act 1989 relates to the functions of the [<sup>F379</sup>Agency], nothing in this Act or in any such enactment shall be construed as authorising the carrying out of any development (within the meaning of that Act of 1990) without the grant of such planning permission as may be required by that Act of 1990.

- (2) Nothing in the flood defence provisions of this Act shall authorise any person to carry out any works or do anything in contravention of any of the provisions of the <sup>M70</sup>Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979.

#### Textual Amendments

**F379** Word in s. 183 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C126** S. 183 applied (01.12.1991) by **Land Drainage Act 1991** (c. 59, SIF 73:1), **ss. 67(2), 76(2)**.

#### Marginal Citations

**M68** 1990 c. 8.

**M69** 1989 c. 15.

**M70** 1979 c. 46.

## 184 Duties to make recreational facilities available when building reservoirs in Wales.

- (1) Where the [<sup>F380</sup>Agency] carries out any works for or in connection with the construction or operation of a reservoir in Wales which—
- permanently affect one or more communities; and
  - are not primarily intended by the [<sup>F380</sup>Agency] to benefit the inhabitants of that or those communities,

it shall be the duty of the [<sup>F380</sup>Agency] to make available facilities for recreation or other leisure-time occupation for the benefit of those inhabitants or to assist others to make such facilities available.

- (2) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F380</sup>Agency], in performing its duty under subsection (1) above, to consult—
- the community councils of the communities affected, in the case of communities having such councils; and
  - in any case, the council of any [<sup>F381</sup>county or county borough] in which any community affected is situated.

#### Textual Amendments

**F380** Words in s. 184 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

**F381** Words in s. 184(2)(b) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 22(5), **Sch. 11, para. 3(5)** (with ss. 54(4) (7), 55(5), **Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)**); S.I. 1996/396, **art. 3, Sch. 1**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Savings in respect of existing drainage obligations*

#### **185 Savings in respect of existing drainage obligations.**

- (1) Nothing in the flood defence provisions of this Act shall operate to release any person from an obligation to which section 21 of the <sup>M71</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 applies.
- (2) The functions of the [<sup>F382</sup>Agency] as respects the doing of any work under the flood defence provisions of this Act are not to be treated as in any way limited by the fact that some other person is under an obligation, by reason of tenure, custom, prescription or otherwise, to do that work.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F382** Word in s. 185 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M71** 1991 c. 59.

### *Interpretation of Part VII*

#### **186 Interpretation of Part VII.**

- (1) In this Part—
  - “discharge pipe” means a pipe from which discharges are or are to be made under section 163 above;
  - “resource main” means any pipe, not being a trunk main within the meaning of the <sup>M72</sup>Water Industry Act 1991, which is or is to be used for the purpose of—
    - (a) conveying water from one source of supply to another, from a source of supply to a regulating reservoir or from a regulating reservoir to a source of supply; or
    - (b) giving or taking a supply of water in bulk.
- (2) In subsection (1) above—
  - “source of supply” shall be construed without reference to the definition of that expression in section 221 below; and
  - “supply of water in bulk” has the same meaning as in section 3 above.
- (3) The powers conferred by Chapter I of this Part shall be without prejudice to the powers conferred on the [<sup>F383</sup>Agency] by any other enactment or by any agreement.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F383** Word in s. 186 substituted (subject to the other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M72** 1991 c. 56.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART VIII

### INFORMATION PROVISIONS

#### *Annual report and publication of information*

<sup>F384</sup>187 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F384** S. 187 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 168, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### 188 **Duty of [<sup>F385</sup>Agency] to publish certain information.**

It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F385</sup>Agency]—

- (a) to collate and publish information from which assessments can be made of the actual and prospective demand for water, and of actual and prospective water resources, in England and Wales; and
- (b) so far as it considers it appropriate to do so, to collaborate with others in collating and publishing any such information or any similar information in relation to places outside England and Wales.

#### Textual Amendments

**F385** Words in s. 188 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### *Registers etc. to be kept by the [<sup>F386</sup>Agency]*

#### Textual Amendments

**F386** Words in cross-heading substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### 189 **Register of abstraction and impounding licences.**

- (1) The [<sup>F387</sup>Agency] shall keep, in such manner as may be prescribed, registers containing such information as may be prescribed with respect—
  - (a) to applications made for the grant, revocation or variation of licences under Chapter II of Part II of this Act, including information as to the way in which such applications have been dealt with; and
  - (b) to persons becoming the holders of such licences by virtue of [<sup>F388</sup>section 59A, 59B or 59C above].
- (2) Every register kept by the [<sup>F387</sup>Agency] under this section shall also contain such information as may be prescribed with respect—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) to applications made in accordance with regulations under section 64 above; and
  - (b) to licences granted or deemed to be granted, and licences revoked or varied, in accordance with regulations made under that section.
- (3) Subject to any regulations under this section, the information which the [<sup>F387</sup>Agency] is required to keep in registers under this section shall continue to include the information which immediately before 1st September 1989 was contained in a register kept by a water authority under section 53 of the <sup>M73</sup>Water Resources Act 1963.
- (4) The contents of every register kept under this section shall be available, at such place as may be prescribed, for inspection by the public at all reasonable hours.

**Textual Amendments**

- F387** Words in s. 189 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F388** Words in s. 189(1)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), **ss. 23(3), 105(3)**; S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(m)** (with Sch. para. 3)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C127** S. 189 modified (1.4.2005) by The Water Act 2003 (Commencement No. 4, Transitional Provisions and Savings) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/968), **art. 4(1)(3), Sch. 1 paras. 7(10), 8(3), 9**

**Marginal Citations**

- M73** 1963 c. 38.

**190 Pollution control register.**

- (1) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F389</sup>Agency] to maintain, in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State, registers containing prescribed particulars of [<sup>F390</sup>or relating to]—
- (a) any notices of water quality objectives or other notices served under section 83 above;
  - <sup>F391</sup>(b) .....
  - <sup>F392</sup>(c) .....
  - <sup>F393</sup>(d) .....
  - (e) the following, that is to say—
    - (i) samples of water or effluent taken by the [<sup>F389</sup>Agency] for the purposes of any of the water pollution provisions of this Act;
    - (ii) information produced by analyses of those samples;
    - (iii) such information with respect to samples of water or effluent taken by any other person, and the analyses of those samples, as is acquired by the [<sup>F389</sup>Agency] from any person under arrangements made by the [<sup>F389</sup>Agency] for the purposes of any of those provisions; and
    - (iv) the steps taken in consequence of any such information as is mentioned in any of sub-paragraphs (i) to (iii) above;
  - <sup>F394</sup>(f) .....
  - <sup>F395</sup>(g) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F396(h) .....
- F397(j) .....
- F398(k) .....
- [F399(l) directions given by the Secretary of State in relation to the Agency’s functions under the water pollution provisions of this Act;
- F400(m) .....
- F401(n) .....
- (o) works notices under section 161A above;
- (p) appeals under section 161C above;
- (q) convictions for offences under section 161D above;
- (r) such other matters relating to the quality of water or the pollution of water as may be prescribed by the Secretary of State.

(1A) Where information of any description is excluded from any register by virtue of section 191B below, a statement shall be entered in the register indicating the existence of information of that description.]

- (2) It shall be the duty of the [F389Agency]—
- (a) to secure that the contents of registers maintained by the [F389Agency] under this section are available, at all reasonable times, for inspection by the public free of charge; and
  - (b) to afford members of the public reasonable facilities for obtaining from the [F389Agency], on payment of reasonable charges, copies of entries in any of the registers.

[F402and, for the purposes of this subsection, places may be prescribed by the Secretary of State at which any such registers or facilities as are mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above are to be available or afforded to the public in pursuance of the paragraph in question.]

(3) Section 101 above shall have effect in relation to any regulations under this section as it has effect in relation to any subordinate legislation under Part III of this Act.

[F403(4) The Secretary of State may give to the Agency directions requiring the removal from any register maintained by it under this section of any specified information which is not prescribed for inclusion under subsection (1) above or which, by virtue of section 191A or 191B below, ought to have been excluded from the register.]

F404(5) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F389** Words in s. 190 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**F390** Words in s. 190(1) inserted (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 169(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)

**F391** S. 190(1)(b) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o)**, **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**F392** S. 190(1)(c) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010](#) (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o)**, **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F393** S. 190(1)(d) repealed (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 169(3), **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)
- F394** S. 190(1)(f) and word preceding it repealed (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 169(4), **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)
- F395** S. 190(1)(g) repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F396** S. 190(1)(h) repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F397** S. 190(1)(j) repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F398** S. 190(1)(k) repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F399** S. 190(1)(g)-(r)(1A) added (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 169(4)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)
- F400** S. 190(1)(m) repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F401** S. 190(1)(n) repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F402** Words in s. 190(2) added (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 169(5)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)
- F403** S. 190(4)(5) added (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 169(6)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)
- F404** S. 190(5) repealed (6.4.2010) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675), reg. 1(1)(b), Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(o), **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C128** S. 190 amended (27.8.1993) by 1993 c. 12, ss. 40, 51(2), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9** (with s. 46).
- C129** S. 190 modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/2043), reg. 1(b), **Sch. 1**)

**191 Register for the purposes of works discharges.**

- (1) The [<sup>F405</sup>Agency] shall keep a register of persons and premises for the purposes of section 164 above.
- (2) The [<sup>F405</sup>Agency] shall enter the name and address of a person in that register in respect of any premises which abut on any watercourse if that person has requested to be so registered and is either—
  - (a) the owner or occupier of those premises; or
  - (b) an officer of an association of owners or occupiers of premises which abut on that watercourse and include those premises.
- (3) If the [<sup>F405</sup>Agency] contravenes, without reasonable excuse, any of the requirements of this section, it shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F405** Words in s. 191 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### [<sup>F406</sup>191A] **Exclusion from registers of information affecting national security.**

- (1) No information shall be included in a register kept or maintained by the Agency under any provision of this Act if and so long as, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, the inclusion in such a register of that information, or information of that description, would be contrary to the interests of national security.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, for the purpose of securing the exclusion from registers of information to which subsection (1) above applies, give to the Agency directions—
  - (a) specifying information, or descriptions of information, to be excluded from their registers; or
  - (b) specifying descriptions of information to be referred to the Secretary of State for his determination;and no information referred to the Secretary of State in pursuance of paragraph (b) above shall be included in any such register until the Secretary of State determines that it should be so included.
- (3) The Agency shall notify the Secretary of State of any information it excludes from a register in pursuance of directions under subsection (2) above.
- (4) A person may, as respects any information which appears to him to be information to which subsection (1) above may apply, give a notice to the Secretary of State specifying the information and indicating its apparent nature; and, if he does so—
  - (a) he shall notify the Agency that he has done so; and
  - (b) no information so notified to the Secretary of State shall be included in any such register until the Secretary of State has determined that it should be so included.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F406** S. 191A inserted (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 170** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C130** S. 191A applied (with modifications) (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1998/2746, **reg. 14(3)**

#### [<sup>F407</sup>191B] **Exclusion from registers of certain confidential information.**

- (1) No information relating to the affairs of any individual or business shall, without the consent of that individual or the person for the time being carrying on that business, be included in a register kept or maintained by the Agency under any provision of this Act, if and so long as the information—
  - (a) is, in relation to him, commercially confidential; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) is not required to be included in the register in pursuance of directions under subsection (7) below;

but information is not commercially confidential for the purposes of this section unless it is determined under this section to be so by the Agency or, on appeal, by the Secretary of State.

(2) Where information is furnished to the Agency for the purpose of—

<sup>F408</sup>(a) .....

<sup>F409</sup>(b) .....

(c) complying with a notice under section 202 below,

then, if the person furnishing it applies to the Agency to have the information excluded from any register kept or maintained by the Agency under any provision of this Act, on the ground that it is commercially confidential (as regards himself or another person), the Agency shall determine whether the information is or is not commercially confidential.

(3) A determination under subsection (2) above must be made within the period of fourteen days beginning with the date of the application and if the Agency fails to make a determination within that period it shall be treated as having determined that the information is commercially confidential.

(4) Where it appears to the Agency that any information (other than information furnished in circumstances within subsection (2) above) which has been obtained by the Agency under or by virtue of any provision of any enactment might be commercially confidential, the Agency shall—

(a) give to the person to whom or whose business it relates notice that that information is required to be included in a register kept or maintained by the Agency under any provision of this Act, unless excluded under this section; and

(b) give him a reasonable opportunity—  
(i) of objecting to the inclusion of the information on the ground that it is commercially confidential; and  
(ii) of making representations to the Agency for the purpose of justifying any such objection;

and, if any representations are made, the Agency shall, having taken the representations into account, determine whether the information is or is not commercially confidential.

(5) Where, under subsection (2) or (4) above, the Agency determines that information is not commercially confidential—

(a) the information shall not be entered on the register until the end of the period of twenty-one days beginning with the date on which the determination is notified to the person concerned; and

(b) that person may appeal to the Secretary of State against the decision;

and, where an appeal is brought in respect of any information, the information shall not be entered on the register until the end of the period of seven days following the day on which the appeal is finally determined or withdrawn.

[<sup>F410</sup>(6) Section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference to appeals etc) applies to any appeal brought under subsection (5).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6A) If either party to the appeal so requests, or the Secretary of State or Welsh Ministers so decide, an appeal shall be or continue in the form of a hearing (which must be held in private).
- (6B) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to appeals under subsection (5) to the Secretary of State, and the Welsh Ministers may by regulations make provision as to appeals under that subsection to them; and the regulations may, in particular, may make provision as to—
- (a) the period within which and the manner in which appeals are to be brought; and
  - (b) the manner in which appeals are to be considered.]
- (7) The Secretary of State may give to the Agency directions as to specified information, or descriptions of information, which the public interest requires to be included in registers kept or maintained by the Agency under any provision of this Act notwithstanding that the information may be commercially confidential.
- (8) Information excluded from a register shall be treated as ceasing to be commercially confidential for the purposes of this section at the expiry of the period of four years beginning with the date of the determination by virtue of which it was excluded; but the person who furnished it may apply to the Agency for the information to remain excluded from the register on the ground that it is still commercially confidential and the Agency shall determine whether or not that is the case.
- (9) Subsections (5) and (6) above shall apply in relation to a determination under subsection (8) above as they apply in relation to a determination under subsection (2) or (4) above.
- (10) The Secretary of State may by regulations substitute (whether in all cases or in such classes or descriptions of case as may be specified in the regulations) for the period for the time being specified in subsection (3) above such other period as he considers appropriate.
- (11) Information is, for the purposes of any determination under this section, commercially confidential, in relation to any individual or person, if its being contained in the register would prejudice to an unreasonable degree the commercial interests of that individual or person.]

<sup>F411</sup>(12) . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

- F407** S. 191B inserted (21.11.1996 for certain purposes and 31.12.1996 otherwise) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 170** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/2909, **arts. 2, 3** (subject to saving provisions in art. 4)
- F408** S. 191B(2)(a) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(p)**, **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F409** S. 191B(2)(b) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(p)**, **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F410** Ss. 191B(6)-(6B) substituted for s. 191B(6) (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(9)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F411** S. 191B(12) repealed (6.4.2010) by [The Environmental Permitting \(England and Wales\) Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/675\)](#), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(2)(p)**, **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C131** S. 191B applied (with modifications) (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1998/2746, reg. 14(3)

**C132** S. 191B(5): power to delegate functions conferred (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 114(2)(a)(v) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3 (with art. 4)

**192 Maps of fresh-water limits.**

- (1) The Secretary of State—
- (a) shall deposit maps with the [<sup>F412</sup>Agency] showing what appear to him to be the fresh-water limits of every relevant river or watercourse; and
  - (b) may from time to time, if he considers it appropriate to do so by reason of any change of what appears to him to be the fresh-water limit of any river or watercourse, deposit a map showing a revised limit for that river or watercourse.
- (2) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F412</sup>Agency] to keep any maps deposited with it under subsection (1) above available, at all reasonable times, for inspection by the public free of charge.
- (3) In this section “relevant river or watercourse” has the same meaning as in section 104 above.

**Textual Amendments**

**F412** Words in s. 192 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), Sch. 22 para. 128 (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 3 (with art. 4)

**193 Main river maps.**

- (1) Subject to section 194 below, the [<sup>F413</sup>Agency] shall—
- (a) keep the main river map for the area of a regional flood defence committee at the principal office of the [<sup>F413</sup>Agency] for that area; and
  - (b) provide reasonable facilities for inspecting that map and taking copies of and extracts from it;
- and any local authority whose area is wholly or partly within the area of a regional flood defence committee shall, on application to the [<sup>F413</sup>Agency], be entitled to be furnished with copies of the main river map for the area of that committee on payment of such sum as may be agreed between the [<sup>F413</sup>Agency] and that local authority.
- (2) For the purposes of this Act a main river map is a map relating to the area of a regional flood defence committee which—
- (a) shows by a distinctive colour the extent to which any watercourse in that area is to be treated as a main river, or part of a main river, for the purposes of this Act; and
  - (b) indicates (by a distinctive colour or otherwise) which (if any) of those watercourses are watercourses designated in a scheme made under section 137 above;

and, subject to section 194 below, references in this Act to a main river map, in relation to the area of a regional flood defence committee, include so much of any map as, by



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

virtue of paragraph 38 of Schedule 26 to the Water Act 1989, has effect as such a map at the coming into force of this Act.

- (3) A main river map—
  - (a) shall be conclusive evidence for all purposes as to what is a main river; and
  - (b) shall be taken for the purposes of the <sup>M74</sup>Documentary Evidence Act 1868, as it applies to either of the Ministers, to be a document within the meaning of that Act and to have been issued by that Minister.
- (4) In this section and section 194 below “watercourse” has the same meaning as in Part IV of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F413** Words in s. 193 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### Marginal Citations

**M74** 1868 c. 37.

### 194 Amendment of main river maps.

- (1) Either of the Ministers may at any time send the [<sup>F414</sup>Agency] one or more new maps to be substituted for the whole or part of a main river map and containing a statement to that effect.
- (2) A statement contained in a map in pursuance of subsection (1) above shall specify the date on which the substitution is to take effect and the substitution shall take effect in accordance with the statement.
- (3) Where—
  - (a) the area of a regional flood defence committee is altered so as to affect any of the particulars shown on the main river map for that area; or
  - (b) one of the Ministers confirms a scheme under section 137 above; or
  - (c) the [<sup>F414</sup>Agency] applies to one of the Ministers for the variation of a main river map, so far as it shows the extent to which any watercourse is to be treated as a main river or part of a main river,the Ministers shall each be under a duty to ensure that such action as he considers appropriate is taken under subsection (4) below.
- (4) The action referred to in subsection (3) above is action by one of the Ministers—
  - (a) requiring the [<sup>F414</sup>Agency] to send him any part of the main river map in question, altering it and sending it back to the ; or
  - (b) preparing a new main river map and sending it to the [<sup>F414</sup>Agency]; or
  - (c) notifying the [<sup>F414</sup>Agency] that he does not intend to vary the main river map in question.
- (5) Before one of the Ministers alters a map or prepares a new map by virtue of subsection (3)(c) above, he shall—
  - (a) give notice of his intention to do so in such manner as he thinks best adapted for informing persons affected; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) consider any objections made to him within the time and in the manner specified in that notice;
- and he may then alter or prepare the map either in accordance with the proposals contained in the notice or otherwise.

#### Textual Amendments

**F414** Words in s. 194 substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C133** S. 194(5) excluded (16.3.1992) by Aire and Calder Navigation Act 1992 (c. iv), **s. 15(3)**

### 195 Maps of waterworks.

- (1) Subject to subsections (4) and (5) below, it shall be the duty of the [<sup>F415</sup>Agency] to keep records of the location of—
  - (a) every resource main or discharge pipe which is for the time being vested in the [<sup>F415</sup>Agency]; and
  - (b) any other underground works which are for the time being vested in the [<sup>F415</sup>Agency].
- (2) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F415</sup>Agency] to secure that the contents of any records for the time being kept by it under this section are available, at all reasonable times, for inspection by the public free of charge at an office of the [<sup>F415</sup>Agency].
- (3) Any information which is required under this section to be made available by the [<sup>F415</sup>Agency] for inspection by the public shall be so made available in the form of a map.
- (4) For the purpose of determining whether any failure to make a modification of any records kept under this section constitutes a breach of the duty imposed by subsection (1) above, that duty shall be taken to require any modification of the records to be made as soon as reasonably practicable after the completion of the works which make the modification necessary; and, where records kept under this section are modified, the date of the modification and of the completion of the works making the modification necessary shall be incorporated in the records.
- (5) Nothing in this section shall require the [<sup>F415</sup>Agency], at any time before 1st September 1999, to keep records of—
  - (a) any pipe which was laid before 1st September 1989; or
  - (b) any underground works which were completed before 1st September 1989, unless those particulars were shown on 31st August 1989 on a map kept by a water authority or statutory water company under section 12 of Schedule 3 to the <sup>M75</sup>Water Act 1945 (maps of underground works).
- (6) The reference in subsection (5) above to section 12 of Schedule 3 to the Water Act 1945 shall have effect, without prejudice to section 20(2) of the <sup>M76</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 (references to enactments to include references to enactments as amended, extended or applied), as including a reference to that section as applied, with or without modifications, by any local statutory provision.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(7) In this section—

“discharge pipe” and “resource main” have the same meanings as in Part VII of this Act;

“underground works” does not include a service pipe within the meaning of the <sup>M77</sup>Water Industry Act 1991.

**Textual Amendments**

**F415** Words in s. 195 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**Marginal Citations**

**M75** 1945 c. 42.  
**M76** 1978 c. 30.  
**M77** 1991 c. 56.

*Provision and acquisition of information etc.*

<sup>F416</sup>**196** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F416** S. 196 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), **Sch. 22 para. 171**, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**197 Provision of information about water flow etc.**

(1) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F417</sup>Agency]—

(a) to provide a water undertaker with all such information to which this section applies as is in the possession of the [<sup>F417</sup>Agency] and is reasonably requested by the undertaker for purposes connected with the carrying out of its functions; and

(b) to provide reasonable facilities to all persons—

(i) for the inspection of the contents of any records kept by the [<sup>F417</sup>Agency] and containing information to which this section applies; and

(ii) for the taking of copies of, or of extracts from, any such records.

(2) It shall be the duty of every water undertaker to provide the [<sup>F417</sup>Agency] with all such information to which this section applies as is in the possession of the undertaker and is reasonably requested by the [<sup>F417</sup>Agency] for purposes connected with the carrying out of any of its functions.

(3) Where records of the flow, level or volume of any inland waters, other than discrete waters, are kept by a person other than a water undertaker, the [<sup>F417</sup>Agency] shall have the right at all reasonable times—

(a) to inspect the contents of any of those records; and

(b) to take copies of, or of extracts from, the contents of any of those records;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and any person who, without reasonable excuse, refuses or fails to permit the [F417 Agency] to exercise its right under this subsection shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 1 on the standard scale.

- (4) Information provided to a water undertaker or to the [F417 Agency] under subsection (1) or (2) above shall be provided in such form and in such manner and at such times as the undertaker or, as the case may be, the [F417 Agency] may reasonably require; and the duties of the [F417 Agency] under subsection (1) above shall extend to information provided to or obtained by the [F417 Agency] under subsection (2) or (3) above.
- (5) Information or facilities provided under subsection (1) or (2) above to the [F417 Agency], to a water undertaker, to a local authority or joint planning board, or to an internal drainage board, shall be provided free of charge; and facilities provided under subsection (1) above to other persons may be provided on terms requiring the payment by persons making use of the facilities of such reasonable charges as the may determine.
- (6) The duties of a water undertaker under subsection (2) above shall be enforceable under section 18 of the M78 Water Industry Act 1991 by the Secretary of State.
- (7) This section applies to information about the flow, level or volume of any inland waters or any water contained in underground strata, about rainfall or any fall of snow, hail or sleet or about the evaporation of any water.

#### Textual Amendments

**F417** Words in s. 197 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### Marginal Citations

**M78** 1991 c. 56.

## 198 Information about underground water.

- (1) Any person who, for the purpose of searching for or abstracting water, proposes to sink a well or borehole intended to reach a depth of more than fifty feet below the surface shall, before he begins to do so, give notice to the Natural Environment Research Council of his intention to do so.
- (2) Any person sinking any such well or borehole as is mentioned in subsection (1) above shall-
  - (a) keep a journal of the progress of the work and, on completion or abandonment of the work, send a complete copy of the journal to the Natural Environment Research Council;
  - (b) send to that Council particulars of any test made before completion or abandonment of the work of the flow of water;
  - (c) allow any person authorised by that Council for the purpose, on production of some duly authenticated document showing his authority, at all reasonable times to exercise any of the rights specified in subsection (5) below.
- (3) The journal required to be kept under this section shall include measurements of—
  - (a) the strata passed through; and
  - (b) the levels at which water is struck and subsequently rests.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) The particulars required to be sent to the Natural Environment Research Council under subsection (2)(b) above shall specify—
  - (a) the rate of flow throughout the test;
  - (b) the duration of the test;
  - (c) where practicable, the water levels during the test and afterwards until the water returns to its natural level; and
  - (d) where the well or borehole is sunk in connection with an existing pumping station, the rate of pumping at the existing works during the test.
- (5) The rights mentioned in subsection (2)(c) above are the rights, subject to section 205 below—
  - (a) to have free access to the well or borehole;
  - (b) to inspect the well or borehole and the material extracted from it;
  - (c) to take specimens of any such material and of water abstracted from the well or borehole; and
  - (d) to inspect and take copies of or extracts from the journal required to be kept under this section.
- (6) Where the person sinking a well or borehole on any land is not the occupier of the land, the obligation imposed on that person by virtue of subsection (2)(c) above shall be the obligation of the occupier as well.
- (7) Where—
  - (a) any person contracts to sink any well or borehole on land belonging to or occupied by another; and
  - (b) the carrying out of the work is under the control of the contractor,the contractor and no other person shall be deemed for the purposes of this section to be the person sinking the well or borehole.
- (8) Any person who fails to comply with any obligation imposed on him by this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction—
  - (a) to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale; and
  - (b) where the offence continues after conviction, to a further fine of £20 for every day during which it so continues.

## **199 Notice etc. of mining operations which may affect water conservation.**

- (1) Where a person proposes to construct or extend a boring for the purpose of searching for or extracting minerals, he shall, before he begins to construct or extend the boring, give to the [<sup>F418</sup>Agency] a notice of his intention in the prescribed form.
- [<sup>F419</sup>(2) Where a notice under subsection (1) above is given to the Agency by any person, the Agency may (subject to section 199A below) by notice to that person require him, in connection with the construction, extension or use of the work to which that person's notice relates, to take such reasonable measures for conserving water as are specified in the notice.
- (2A) The measures that may be specified in a notice under subsection (2) above shall be measures which, in the opinion of the Agency, will not interfere with the winning of minerals.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Section 70 above shall apply to the restrictions imposed by this section as it applies to the restrictions imposed by sections 24 and 25 above.]
- (4) Any person who contravenes subsection (1) above or fails to comply with a [<sup>F420</sup>notice under] subsection (2) above shall be guilty of an offence and liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

#### Textual Amendments

- F418** Word in s. 199 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F419** S. 199(2)(2A)(3) substituted for s. 199(2)(3) (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 8(5)(a), 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(e)** (with **Sch. paras. 4, 5**)
- F420** Words in s. 199(4) substituted (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 8(5)(b), 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(e)** (with **Sch. paras. 4, 5**)

#### [<sup>F421</sup>199A] Appeals against conservation notices under section 199

- (1) The person on whom a notice under section 199(2) above (“a conservation notice”) is served may, by notice to the Secretary of State, appeal to him against the conservation notice on either or both of the following grounds, that is to say—
  - (a) that the measures required by the conservation notice are not reasonable;
  - (b) that those measures would interfere with the winning of minerals.
- (2) Any notice of appeal against a conservation notice shall be served within such period (not being less than twenty-eight days from the date of service of the conservation notice) and in such manner as may be prescribed.
- (3) Before determining an appeal against a conservation notice, the Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit—
  - (a) cause a local inquiry to be held; or
  - (b) afford to the appellant and the Agency an opportunity of appearing before, and being heard by, a person appointed by the Secretary of State for the purpose;
 and the Secretary of State shall act as mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) above if a request is made by the appellant or the Agency to be heard with respect to an appeal.
- (4) On an appeal against a conservation notice the Secretary of State may confirm, quash or vary the notice as he may consider appropriate.
- (5) The decision of the Secretary of State on any appeal against a conservation notice shall be final.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to the manner in which appeals against conservation notices are to be dealt with, including provision requiring the giving of notices of, and information relating to, the making of such appeals or decisions on any such appeals.
- (7) Section 69 above applies to a decision of the Secretary of State on any appeal to him under this section as it applies to a decision of his on an appeal to him under Chapter 2 of Part 2, taking the reference in subsection (2)(b) of that section to that Chapter as a reference to this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) This section is subject to section 114 of the 1995 Act (delegation or reference of appeals).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F421** S. 199A inserted (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\)](#), **ss. 8(6)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(e)** (with [Sch. paras. 4, 5](#))

## 200 Gauges and records kept by other persons.

- (1) Subject to subsection (3) below, any person other than the [<sup>F422</sup>Agency], who proposes to install a gauge for measuring and recording the flow, level or volume of any inland waters other than discrete waters—
- shall give notice to the [<sup>F422</sup>Agency] of his proposal to install the gauge; and
  - shall not begin the work of installing it before the end of the period of three months beginning with the date of service of the notice or such shorter period as the [<sup>F422</sup>Agency] may in any particular case allow.
- (2) Not more than one month after any such work as is mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (1) above is completed, the person required to give notice under that subsection shall give notice to the [<sup>F422</sup>Agency] stating where the records obtained by means of the gauge are to be kept.
- (3) Subsections (1) and (2) above shall not apply—
- to any gauge installed for the sole purpose of indicating the level of any inland waters for the benefit of persons who fish in them; or
  - to any gauge which is removed at or before the end of the period of twenty-eight days beginning with the date on which it is installed.
- (4) Any person who contravenes subsection (1) or (2) above shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding level 1 on the standard scale.

#### Textual Amendments

**F422** Words in s. 200 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120\(1\)](#), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with [art. 4](#))

## [<sup>F423</sup>201 Power to require information in respect of water resources functions

- (1) Subject to subsection (2) below, the Secretary of State or the Agency may serve on any person a notice requiring that person to furnish him or, as the case may be, it, within a period or at times specified in the notice and in a form and manner so specified, with such information as is reasonably required by the Secretary of State or by the Agency for the purpose of carrying out any of his or, as the case may be, its water resources functions.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall have power by regulations to make provision for restricting the information which may be required under subsection (1) above and for determining the form in which the information is to be so required.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A person who fails without reasonable excuse to comply with the requirements of a notice served on him under this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.
  
- (4) References in this section to the water resources functions of the Secretary of State or of the Agency are references to the functions of the Secretary of State or of the Agency under Part 2 of this Act or under any provisions not contained in that Part which are related water resources provisions in relation to Chapter 2 of that Part.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F423** S. 201 substituted (1.4.2005) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 70, 105\(3\)](#); S.I. 2005/968, art. 2(k)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C134** S. 201 applied (1.4.2006) by [Water Act 2003 \(c. 37\), ss. 33\(3\)\(c\), 105\(3\)](#); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(p)

**202 Information and assistance required in connection with the control of pollution.**

- (1) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F424</sup>Agency], if and so far as it is requested to do so by either of the Ministers, to give him all such advice and assistance as appears to it to be appropriate for facilitating the carrying out by him of his functions under the water pollution provisions of this Act.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) below, either of the Ministers or the [<sup>F424</sup>Agency] may serve on any person a notice requiring that person to furnish him or, as the case may be, it, within a period or at times specified in the notice and in a form and manner so specified, with such information as is reasonably required by the the Minister in question or by the [<sup>F424</sup>Agency] for the purpose of carrying out any of his or, as the case may be, its functions under the water pollution provisions of this Act.
- (3) Each of the Ministers shall have power by regulations to make provision for restricting the information which may be required under subsection (2) above and for determining the form in which the information is to be so required.
- (4) A person who fails without reasonable excuse to comply with the requirements of a notice served on him under this section shall be guilty of an offence and [<sup>F425</sup>liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.]

<sup>F426</sup>(5) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F424** Words in s. 202 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120\(1\), Sch. 22 para. 128](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#) (with art. 4)

**F425** Words in s. 202(4) substituted (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120\(1\), Sch. 22 para. 172\(1\)](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#) (with art. 4)

**F426** S. 202(5) repealed (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25, s. 120\(1\)\(3\), Sch. 22 para. 172\(2\), Sch. 24](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#) (with art. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C135** S. 202 amended (27.8.1993) by 1993 c. 12, ss. 40, 51(2), **Sch. 3 Pt. I para. 9** (with s. 46).  
**C136** S. 202 modified (2.1.2004) by **The Water Environment (Water Framework Directive) (England and Wales) Regulations 2003** (S.I. 2003/3242), regs. 1(a), **19(2)** (with reg. 1(c))  
**C137** S. 202 modified by S.I. 2010/675, Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9 (as substituted (1.10.2011) by **The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011** (S.I. 2011/2043), reg. 1(b), **Sch. 1**)  
**C138** S. 202(2) modified (6.1.1997) by S.I. 1996/3001, **reg. 7(3)**  
S. 202(2) modified (12.6.1997) by S.I. 1997/1331, **reg. 6(3)**  
S. 202(2) modified (12.6.1997) by S.I. 1997/1332, **reg. 6(3)**

**203 Exchange of information with respect to pollution incidents etc.**

- (1) It shall be the duty of the [<sup>F427</sup>Agency] to provide a water undertaker with all such information to which this section applies as is in the possession of the [<sup>F427</sup>Agency] and is reasonably requested by the undertaker for purposes connected with the carrying out of its functions.
- [<sup>F428</sup>(1A) It shall be the duty of the Agency to provide a licensed water supplier with all such information to which this section applies as is in the possession of the Agency and is reasonably requested by the supplier for purposes connected with the carrying on of activities under its licence.]
- (2) It shall be the duty of every water undertaker to provide the [<sup>F427</sup>Agency] with all such information to which this section applies as is in the possession of the undertaker and is reasonably requested by the [<sup>F427</sup>Agency] for purposes connected with the carrying out of any of its functions.
- [<sup>F429</sup>(2A) It shall be the duty of every licensed water supplier to provide the Agency with all such information to which this section applies as is in the possession of the supplier and is reasonably requested by the Agency for purposes connected with the carrying out of any of its functions.]
- [<sup>F430</sup>(3) Information provided to a water undertaker, to a licensed water supplier or to the Agency under subsection (1), (1A), (2) or (2A) above shall be provided in such form and in such manner and at such times as the undertaker, the supplier or the Agency, as the case may be, may reasonably require.]
- (4) Information provided under [<sup>F431</sup>subsection (1), (1A), (2) or (2A)] above to a water undertaker[<sup>F432</sup>, to a licensed water supplier] or to the [<sup>F427</sup>Agency] shall be provided free of charge.
- (5) The duties of  
[<sup>F433</sup>(a) a water undertaker under subsection (2) above; or  
(b) a licensed water supplier under subsection (2A) above,  
shall] be enforceable under section 18 of the <sup>M79</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 by the Secretary of State.
- (6) This section applies to information—  
(a) about the quality of any controlled waters or of any other waters; or  
(b) about any incident in which any poisonous, noxious or polluting matter or any <sup>F434</sup>... waste matter has entered any controlled waters or other waters.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(7) In this section “controlled waters” has the same meaning as in Part III of this Act.

[<sup>F435</sup>(8) Any reference in this section to a licensed water supplier is a reference to a company holding a licence under Chapter 1A of Part 2 of the Water Industry Act 1991.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F427** Words in s. 203 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F428** S. 203(1A) inserted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(2)(a)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 3(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)
- F429** S. 203(2A) inserted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(2)(b)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 3(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)
- F430** S. 203(3) substituted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(2)(c)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 3(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)
- F431** Words in s. 203(4) substituted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(2)(d)(i)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 3(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)
- F432** Words in s. 203(4) inserted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(2)(d)(ii)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 3(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)
- F433** Words in s. 203(5) substituted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(2)(e)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 3(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)
- F434** Word in s. 203(6)(b) repealed (6.4.2008) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2007 (S.I. 2007/3538), reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 21 para. 21(2)**, **Sch. 23** (with reg. 72, **Sch. 4**)
- F435** S. 203(8) inserted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(2)(f)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 3(c)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C139** S. 203 amended (27.8.1993) by 1993 c. 12, ss. 40, 51(2), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1 para. 9** (with s. 46).
- C140** S. 203 modified by S.I. 2010/675, **Sch. 23 Pt. 8 para. 3 Table 9** (as substituted (1.10.2011) by The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) (Amendment) Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/2043), reg. 1(b), **Sch. 1**)

#### Marginal Citations

- M79** 1991 c. 56.

### *Restriction on disclosure of information*

#### **204 Restriction on disclosure of information.**

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, no information with respect to any particular business which—
- (a) has been obtained by virtue of any of the provisions of this Act; and
  - (b) relates to the affairs of any individual or to any particular business,
- shall, during the lifetime of that individual or so long as that business continues to be carried on, be disclosed without the consent of that individual or the person for the time being carrying on that business.
- (2) Subsection (1) above does not apply to any disclosure of information which is made—
- (a) for the purpose of facilitating the carrying out by either of the Ministers, [<sup>F436</sup>the Agency, the Scottish Environmental Protection Agency], the [<sup>F437</sup>the

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- Water Services Regulation Authority, the Consumer Council for Water], the [<sup>F438</sup>Competition Commission] or a local authority of any of his, its or, as the case may be, their functions by virtue of this Act, any of the other consolidation Acts [<sup>F439</sup>, the Water Act 1989, Part I or IIA of the Environmental Protection Act 1990<sup>F440</sup>, the 1995 Act<sup>F441</sup>, regulations under section 2 of the Pollution Prevention and Control Act 1999, or the Water Act 2003]]];
- (b) for the purpose of facilitating the performance by a water undertaker<sup>F442</sup>, sewerage undertaker or company holding a licence under Chapter 1A of Part 2 of the Water Industry Act 1991] of any of the duties imposed on it by or under this Act, any of the other consolidation Acts<sup>F443</sup>, the Water Act 1989 or the Water Act 2003];
- (c) in pursuance of any duty imposed by section 197(1)(a) or (2) or [<sup>F444</sup>203(1), (1A), (2) or (2A)] above or [<sup>F445</sup>of any duty imposed by section 27H] of the Water Industry Act 1991;
- <sup>F446</sup>(ca) for the purpose of complying with a request under section 14 of the Flood and Water Management Act 2010;]
- (d) for the purpose of facilitating the carrying out by any person mentioned in Part I of Schedule 24 to this Act of any of his functions under any of the enactments or instruments specified in Part II of that Schedule;
- <sup>F447</sup>(e) for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Secretary of State, the Treasury or the Financial Services Authority to exercise any powers conferred by or under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 or by the enactments relating to companies or insolvency;
- (ea) for the purpose of enabling or assisting any inspector appointed under enactments relating to companies to carry out his functions;]
- (f) for the purpose of enabling an official receiver to carry out his functions under the enactments relating to insolvency or for the purpose of enabling or assisting a recognised professional body for the purposes of section 391 of the <sup>M80</sup>Insolvency Act 1986 to carry out its functions as such;
- (g) for the purpose of facilitating the carrying out by <sup>F448</sup>... the Health and Safety Executive of any of its functions under any enactment or of facilitating the carrying out by any enforcing authority, within the meaning of Part I of the <sup>M81</sup>Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974, of any functions under a relevant statutory provision, within the meaning of that Act;
- (h) for the purpose of facilitating the carrying out by the Comptroller and Auditor General of any of his functions under any enactment;
- (i) in connection with the investigation of any criminal offence or for the purposes of any criminal proceedings;
- (j) for the purposes of any civil proceedings brought under or by virtue of this Act, any of the other consolidation Acts, the <sup>M82</sup>Water Act 1989<sup>F449</sup>, the Water Act 2003] or any of the enactments or instruments specified in Part II of Schedule 24 to this Act, or of any arbitration under this Act, any of the other consolidation Acts<sup>F450</sup>, the Water Act 1989 or the Water Act 2003]; or
- (k) in pursuance of [<sup>F231</sup>an][<sup>F231</sup>EU] obligation.
- (3) Nothing in subsection (1) above shall be construed—
- (a) as limiting the matters which may be included in, or made public as part of, a report of—
- (i) the [<sup>F451</sup>Agency];
- <sup>F452</sup>(ia) the Scottish Environment Protection Agency;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F453</sup>(ii) the Water Services Regulation Authority;]  
[<sup>F454</sup>(iii) the Consumer Council for Water (or any regional committee of that Council established under section 27A of the Water Industry Act 1991); or]  
(iv) the [<sup>F455</sup>Competition Commission],  
under any provision of this Act[<sup>F456</sup>, Part I or IIA of the Environmental Protection Act 1990, that Act of 1991[<sup>F457</sup>, the 1995 Act[<sup>F458</sup>, regulations under section 2 of the Pollution Prevention and Control Act 1999, or the Water Act 2003]]];
- (b) as limiting the matters which may be published under section 201 of that Act [<sup>F459</sup>of 1991]; or
- (c) as applying to any information which has been made public as part of such a report or has been so published or to any information exclusively of a statistical nature.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5) below, nothing in subsection (1) above shall preclude the disclosure of information—
- (a) if the disclosure is of information relating to a matter connected with the carrying out of the functions of a water undertaker or sewerage undertaker[<sup>F460</sup>, or with the carrying on by a company holding a licence under Chapter 1A of Part 2 of the Water Industry Act 1991 of activities under its licence,] and is made by one Minister of the Crown or government department to another; or
- (b) if the disclosure is for the purpose of enabling or assisting any public or other authority for the time being designated for the purposes of this section by an order made by the Secretary of State to discharge any functions which are specified in the order.
- (5) The power to make an order under subsection (4) above shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament; and where such an order designates an authority for the purposes of paragraph (b) of that subsection, the order may—
- (a) impose conditions subject to which the disclosure of information is permitted by virtue of that paragraph; and
- (b) otherwise restrict the circumstances in which disclosure is so permitted.
- (6) Any person who discloses any information in contravention of the preceding provisions of this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable—
- (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
- (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine or to both.
- (7) In this section “the other consolidation Acts” means the <sup>M83</sup>Water Industry Act 1991, the <sup>M84</sup>Statutory Water Companies Act 1991, the <sup>M85</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 and the <sup>M86</sup>Water Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1991.

#### Textual Amendments

**F231** Words in Act substituted (22.4.2011) by [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011](#) (S.I. 2011/1043), arts. 2, 3, 6 (with art. 3(2)(3), 4(2), 6(4)(5))

**F436** Words in s. 204(2)(a) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), [Sch. 22 para. 173\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, [art. 3](#) (with art. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F437** Words in s. 204(2)(a) substituted (1.10.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(a)(i)**; S.I. 2005/2714, art. 2(l)(aa)(vi) (with Sch. para. 8)
- F438** Words in s. 204(2)(a) substituted (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/506, **art. 31(a)**
- F439** Words in s. 204(2)(b) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 173(2)(b)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F440** Words in s. 204(2)(a) substituted (21.3.2000) by 1999 c. 24, s. 6, **Sch. 2 para. 8**; S.I. 2000/800, **art. 2**
- F441** Words in s. 204(2)(a) substituted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(a)(ii)**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(y), Sch. 2 (with Sch. 3 para. 7)
- F442** Words in s. 204(2)(b) substituted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(3)(a)**; S.I. 2005/2714, art. 3(c) (with Sch. para. 8)
- F443** Words in s. 204(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(a)(iii)**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(y), Sch. 2 (with Sch. 3 para. 7)
- F444** Words in s. 204(2)(c) substituted (1.12.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(3)(b)**; S.I. 2005/2714, art. 3(c) (with Sch. para. 8)
- F445** Words in s. 204(2)(c) substituted (1.10.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(a)(iv)**; S.I. 2005/2714, art. 2(l)(aa)(vi) (with Sch. para. 8)
- F446** S. 204(2)(ca) inserted (1.4.2011) by Flood and Water Management Act 2010 (c. 29), s. 49(3), **Sch. 2 para. 48** (with s. 49(1)(6)); S.I. 2011/694, art. 3(g)
- F447** S. 204(2)(e)(ea) substituted for s. 204(2)(e) (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, **art. 329**
- F448** Words in s. 204(2)(g) omitted (1.4.2008) by virtue of Legislative Reform (Health and Safety Executive) Order 2008 (S.I. 2008/960), art. 1, **Sch. 3** (with art. 21, Sch. 2)
- F449** Words in s. 204(2)(j) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(a)(v)(a)**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(y), Sch. 2 (with Sch. 3 para. 7)
- F450** Words in s. 204(2)(j) substituted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(a)(v)(b); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(y), Sch. 2 (with Sch. 3 para. 7)
- F451** Words in s. 204 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F452** S. 204(3)(a)(ia) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 173(3)(a)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F453** S. 204(3)(a)(ii) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(b)(i)**; S.I. 2005/2714, art. 4(f) (with Sch. para. 8)
- F454** S. 204(3)(a)(iii) substituted (1.10.2005) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(b)(ii)**; S.I. 2005/2714, art. 2(l)(aa)(vi) (with Sch. para. 8)
- F455** Words in s. 204(3)(a)(iv) substituted (1.4.1999) by S.I. 1999/506, **art. 31(a)**
- F456** Words in s. 204(3)(a) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 173(3)(b)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F457** Words in s. 204(3)(a) substituted (21.3.2000) by 1999 c. 24, s. 6, **Sch. 2 para. 8**; S.I. 2000/800, **art. 2**
- F458** Words in s. 204(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(3)(b)(iii)**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(y), Sch. 2 (with Sch. 3 para. 7)
- F459** Words in s. 204(3)(b) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 173(4)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F460** Words in s. 204(4)(a) inserted (1.4.2004) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 8 para. 53(3)(c)**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(y), Sch. 2 (with Sch. 3 para. 7)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C141** S. 204 applied (01.12.1991) by Land Drainage Act 1991 (c. 59, SIF 73:1), **ss. 70, 76(2)**.
- C142** S. 204 restricted (31.10.2003) by Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (c. 20), s. **115**; S.I. 2003/2681, art. 2(b)
- C143** S. 204(2): disclosure powers extended (14.12.2001) by 2001 c. 24, s. 17, **Sch. 4 Pt.I para. 32**

#### Marginal Citations

- M80** 1986 c. 45.
- M81** 1974 c. 37.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**M82** 1989 c. 15.  
**M83** 1991 c. 56.  
**M84** 1991 c. 58.  
**M85** 1991 c. 59.  
**M86** 1991 c. 60.

## 205 Confidentiality of information relating to underground water etc.

- (1) The person sinking any such well or borehole as is mentioned in section 198 above or, if it is a different person, the owner or occupier of the land on which any such well or borehole is sunk may by notice to the Natural Environment Research Council require that Council to treat as confidential—
  - (a) any copy of or extract from the journal required to be kept under that section; or
  - (b) any specimen taken in exercise of the rights specified in subsection (5) of that section.
- (2) Subject to subsections (3) and (4) below, the Natural Environment Research Council shall not, without the consent of the person giving the notice, allow any matter to which any notice under subsection (1) above relates to be published or shown to any person who is not an officer of that Council or of a department of the Secretary of State.
- (3) Subsection (2) above shall not prohibit any matter from being published or shown to any person in so far as it contains or affords information as to water resources and supplies.
- (4) If at any time the Natural Environment Research Council give notice to any person that in their opinion his consent for the purposes of subsection (2) above is being unreasonably withheld—
  - (a) that person may, within three months after the giving of the notice, appeal to the High Court for an order restraining that Council from acting as if consent had been given; and
  - (b) that Council may proceed as if consent had been given if either no such appeal is brought within that period or the High Court, after hearing the appeal, do not make such an order.
- (5) Any person who fails to comply with any obligation imposed on him by the preceding provisions of this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction—
  - (a) to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale; and
  - (b) where the offence continues after conviction, to a further fine of £20 for every day during which it so continues.
- (6) If any person who is admitted to any premises in compliance with section 198(2)(c) above discloses to any person any information obtained by him there with regard to any manufacturing process or trade secret, he shall, unless the disclosure is in performance of his duty, be guilty of an offence and liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum or to both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding three months or to a fine or to both.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Making of false statements etc.*

**206 Making of false statements etc.**

[<sup>F461</sup>(1) If, in furnishing any information or making any application under or for the purposes of any provision of this Act [<sup>F462</sup>or of section 3, 4 or 10 of the Water Act 2003 ], any person makes a statement which he knows to be false or misleading in a material particular, or recklessly makes any statement which is false or misleading in a material particular, he shall be guilty of an offence under this section.]

<sup>F463</sup>(2) . . . . .

(3) Where—

(a) the provisions contained in a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act in pursuance of paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of section 46 above, or of that paragraph as modified by subsection (6) of that section, require the use of a meter, gauge or other device; and

(b) such a device is used for the purposes of those provisions, any person who wilfully alters or interferes with that device so as to prevent it from measuring correctly shall be guilty of an offence under this section.

[<sup>F464</sup>(3A) If a person intentionally makes a false entry in any record required to be kept by virtue of a licence under Chapter II of Part II of this Act, or a consent under Chapter II of Part III of this Act, he shall be guilty of an offence under this section.]

(4) If, in keeping any record or journal or in furnishing any information which he is required to keep or furnish under section 198 or 205 above, any person knowingly or recklessly makes any statement which is false in a material particular, he shall be guilty of an offence under this section.

[<sup>F465</sup>(5) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable—

(a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;

(b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years, or to both.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F461** S. 206(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 112, **Sch. 19 para. 5(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**F462** Words in s. 206(1) inserted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 11**; S.I. 2006/984, **art. 2(s)(i)**

**F463** S. 206(2) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, ss. 112, 125(2), **Sch. 19 para. 5(3)**, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**F464** S. 206(3A) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 112, **Sch. 19 para. 5(4)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**F465** S. 206(5) substituted for s. 206(5)-(7) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 112, **Sch. 19 para. 5(5)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART IX

### MISCELLANEOUS AND SUPPLEMENTAL

#### *Miscellaneous*

#### **207 Directions in the interests of national security etc.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may, after consultation with the [<sup>F466</sup>Agency], give to the [<sup>F466</sup>Agency] such directions of a general character as appear to the Secretary of State to be requisite or expedient in the interests of national security or for the purpose of mitigating the effects of any civil emergency which may occur.
- (2) If it appears to the Secretary of State to be requisite or expedient to do so in the interests of national security or for the purpose of mitigating the effects of any civil emergency which has occurred or may occur, he may, after consultation with the [<sup>F466</sup>Agency], give to the [<sup>F466</sup>Agency] a direction requiring it to do, or not to do, a particular thing specified in the direction.
- (3) The duty of the [<sup>F466</sup>Agency] to comply with a direction under this section is a duty which has effect notwithstanding any other duty imposed on it (whether or not by or under this Act).
- (4) The Secretary of State shall lay before each House of Parliament a copy of every direction given under this section unless he is of the opinion that disclosure of the direction is against the interests of national security.
- (5) A person shall not disclose, or be required by virtue of any enactment or otherwise to disclose, anything done by virtue of this section if the Secretary of State has notified him that the Secretary of State is of the opinion that disclosure of that thing is against the interests of national security.
- (6) Any person who discloses any matter in contravention of subsection (5) above shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine or to both.
- (7) Any reference in this section to a civil emergency is a reference to any natural disaster or other emergency which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, is or may be likely, in relation to any area—
  - (a) so to disrupt water supplies or sewerage services; or
  - (b) to involve such destruction of or damage to life or property in that area, as seriously and adversely to affect all the inhabitants of that area, or a substantial number of them, whether by depriving them of any of the essentials of life or otherwise.
- (8) In this section “sewerage services” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M87</sup>Water Industry Act 1991.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F466** Words in s. 207 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Marginal Citations

M87 1991 c. 56.

## 208 Civil liability of the [F467 Agency] for escapes of water etc.

- (1) Where an escape of water, however caused, from a pipe vested in the [F467 Agency] causes loss or damage, the [F467 Agency] shall be liable, except as otherwise provided in this section, for the loss or damage.
- (2) The [F467 Agency] shall not incur any liability under subsection (1) above if the escape was due wholly to the fault of the person who sustained the loss or damage or of any servant, agent or contractor of his.
- (3) The [F467 Agency] shall not incur any liability under subsection (1) above in respect of any loss or damage for which the [F467 Agency] would not be liable apart from that subsection and which is sustained—
  - (a) by any water undertaker or sewerage undertaker or by any statutory undertakers, within the meaning of section 336(1) of the <sup>M88</sup>Town and Country Planning Act 1990;
  - (b) by any public gas supplier within the meaning of Part I of the <sup>M89</sup>Gas Act 1986 or the holder of a licence under section 6(1) of the <sup>M90</sup>Electricity Act 1989;
  - (c) by any highway authority; or
  - (d) by any person on whom a right to compensation is conferred by section 82 of the <sup>M91</sup>New Roads and Street Works Act 1991.
- (4) The <sup>M92</sup>Law Reform (Contributory Negligence) Act 1945, the <sup>M93</sup>Fatal Accidents Act 1976 and the <sup>M94</sup>Limitation Act 1980 shall apply in relation to any loss or damage for which the [F467 Agency] is liable under this section, but which is not due to the [F467 Agency's] fault, as if it were due to its fault.
- (5) Nothing in subsection (1) above affects any entitlement which the [F467 Agency] may have to recover contribution under the <sup>M95</sup>Civil Liability (Contribution) Act 1978; and for the purposes of that Act, any loss for which the [F467 Agency] is liable under that subsection shall be treated as if it were damage.
- (6) Where the [F467 Agency] is liable under any enactment or agreement passed or made before 1st April 1982 to make any payment in respect of any loss or damage the [F467 Agency] shall not incur liability under subsection (1) above in respect of the same loss or damage.
- (7) In this section “fault” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M96</sup>Law Reform (Contributory Negligence) Act 1945.
- (8) Until the coming into force of section 82 of the <sup>M97</sup>New Roads and Street Works Act 1991, subsection (3) above shall have effect as if for paragraph (d) there were substituted the following paragraphs—
  - “(d) by any bridge authority, bridge managers, street authority or street managers within the meaning of the <sup>M98</sup>Public Utilities Street Works Act 1950; or
  - (e) by any person on whom a right to compensation under section 26 of that Act of 1950 is conferred.”; but nothing in this section shall be taken to prejudice the power of the Secretary of State under that Act of 1991 to make an order bringing section 82 of that Act into force on

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

different days for different purposes (including the purposes of this section).

**Textual Amendments**

**F467** Words in s. 208 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C144** S. 208(3)(b) amended (1.3.1996) by 1995 c. 45, s. 16(1), **Sch. 4 para. 2(2)(n)**; S.I. 1996/218, **art. 2**

**Marginal Citations**

- M88** 1990 c. 8.
- M89** 1986 c. 44.
- M90** 1989 c. 29.
- M91** 1991 c. 22.
- M92** 1945 c. 28.
- M93** 1976 c. 30.
- M94** 1980 c. 58.
- M95** 1978 c. 47.
- M96** 1945 c. 28.
- M97** 1991 c. 22.
- M98** 1950 c. 39.

**209 Evidence of samples and abstractions.**

**F468**(1) .....

**F468**(2) .....

(3) Where, in accordance with the provisions contained in a licence in pursuance of paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of section 46 above, or in pursuance of that paragraph as read with subsection (6) of that section, it has been determined what quantity of water is to be taken—

- (a) to have been abstracted during any period from a source of supply by the holder of the licence; or
- (b) to have been so abstracted at a particular point or by particular means, or for use for particular purposes,

that determination shall, for the purposes of any proceedings under Chapter II of Part II of this Act or any of the related water resources provisions, be conclusive evidence of the matters to which it relates.

**F468**(4) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F468** S. 209(1)(2)(4) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, ss. 111(1)(c), 120(3), **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## Byelaws

### 210 Byelaw-making powers of the [<sup>F469</sup>Agency].

- (1) Schedule 25 to this Act shall have effect for conferring powers on the [<sup>F469</sup>Agency] to make byelaws for purposes connected with the carrying out of its functions.
- (2) Schedule 26 to this Act shall have effect in relation to byelaws made by the [<sup>F469</sup>Agency], whether by virtue of subsection (1) above or by virtue of any other enactment.

[<sup>F470</sup>(3) Schedule 27 to this Act (emergency fisheries byelaws) shall have effect.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F469** Words in s. 210 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**F470** S. 210(3) inserted (12.1.2010) by **Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23)**, **ss. 225(1), 324(3)**; S.I. 2009/3345, **art. 2, Sch. para. 14**

### 211 Enforcement of byelaws.

- (1) If any person contravenes any byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 1 of Schedule 25 to this Act, he shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction—
  - (a) to a fine not exceeding level 1 on the standard scale; and
  - (b) if the contravention is continued after conviction, to a fine not exceeding £5 for each day on which it is so continued.
- (2) Byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 2 or 3 of that Schedule may contain provision providing for a contravention of the byelaws to constitute a summary offence punishable, on summary conviction, by a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale or such smaller sum as may be specified in the byelaws.
- (3) A person who contravenes any byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 4 or 6 of that Schedule shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction,
  - [<sup>F471</sup>(a) in the case of byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 4, to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale or such smaller sum as may be specified in the byelaws;
  - (b) in the case of byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 6, to a fine not exceeding £50,000.]
- (4) If any person acts in contravention of any byelaw made by virtue of paragraph 5 of that Schedule he shall be guilty of an offence and liable, on summary conviction—
  - (a) to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale; and
  - (b) if the contravention is continued after conviction, to a further fine not exceeding £40 for each day on which it is so continued.
- (5) Without prejudice to any proceedings by virtue of subsection (1) or (4) above, the [<sup>F472</sup>Agency] may—
  - (a) take such action as it considers necessary to remedy the effect of any contravention of byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 1 of Schedule 25 to this Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) take such action as may be necessary to remedy the effect of any person's contravention of byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 5 of that Schedule; and
  - (c) recover the expenses reasonably incurred by the [<sup>F472</sup>Agency] in taking any action under paragraph (a) or (b) above from the person in default.
- (6) So much of the <sup>M99</sup>Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975 as makes provision with respect to or by reference to offences under that Act shall have effect as if an offence consisting in a contravention of byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 6 of Schedule 25 to this Act were an offence under that Act.
- (7) Section 70 above shall apply in relation to any restrictions imposed by byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 1 of Schedule 25 to this Act as it applies in relation to restrictions imposed by the provisions of Chapter II of Part II of this Act which are mentioned in that section; and sections 100 and 101 above shall have effect in relation to contraventions of byelaws made by virtue of paragraph 4 of that Schedule as they have effect in relation to contraventions of provisions of Part III of this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F471** S. 211(3)(a)(b) substituted (12.1.2010) by [Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 \(c. 23\)](#), **ss. 226**, 324(3); [S.I. 2009/3345](#), **art. 2**, **Sch. para. 14**

**F472** Words in s. 211 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 25](#), s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with [ss. 7\(6\)](#), 115, 117); [S.I. 1996/186](#), **art. 3** (with [art. 4](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C145** S. 211 excluded (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1746](#), **art. 4(1)**; [S.I. 1998/3178](#), **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M99** [1975 c. 51](#).

## 212 Compensation in respect of certain fisheries byelaws.

- (1) Where—
- (a) the owner or occupier of any fishery by notice to the [<sup>F473</sup>Agency] claims that the fishery is injuriously affected by a byelaw made for any of the purposes specified in subsection (2) below; and
  - (b) that claim is made at any time before the end of twelve months after the confirmation of the byelaw,
- [<sup>F474</sup>the Agency may pay that person such amount by way of compensation as it considers appropriate. ]
- (2) The purposes mentioned in subsection (1)(a) above are the following purposes specified in paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 25 to this Act, that is to say—
- (a) prohibiting the use for taking [<sup>F475</sup>any fish to which paragraph 6 of that Schedule applies] of any instrument <sup>F476</sup>... in such waters and at such times as are prescribed by the byelaw;
  - (b) specifying the nets and other instruments <sup>F477</sup>... which may be used for taking [<sup>F478</sup>any such fish] and imposing requirements as to the use of such nets and other instruments;
  - (c) imposing requirements as to the construction, design, material and dimensions of any such nets or instruments, including in the case of nets the size of mesh.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F479(3) .....

(4) Expressions used in this section and in the Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975 have the same meanings in this section as in that Act.

**Textual Amendments**

- F473 Words in s. 212 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F474 Words in s. 212(1) substituted (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), **ss. 227(2), 324(3)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. para. 14
- F475 Words in s. 212(2)(a) substituted (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), s. 324(3), **Sch. 16 para. 23(2)(a)(i)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. para. 15(i)
- F476 Words in s. 212(2)(a) repealed (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), s. 324(3), Sch. 16 para. 23(2)(a)(ii), **Sch. 22 Pt. 5(B)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. paras. 15(i), 27(b)
- F477 Words in s. 212(2)(b) repealed (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), s. 324(3), Sch. 16 para. 23(2)(b)(i), **Sch. 22 Pt. 5(B)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. paras. 15(i), 27(b)
- F478 Words in s. 212(2)(b) substituted (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), s. 324(3), **Sch. 16 para. 23(2)(b)(ii)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. para. 15(i)
- F479 S. 212(3) repealed (12.1.2010) by Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009 (c. 23), ss. 227(3), 324(3), **Sch. 22 Pt. 5(B)**; S.I. 2009/3345, art. 2, Sch. paras. 14, 27(b)

*Local inquiries*

F480 213 .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F480 S. 213 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 174, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

F481 214 .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F481 S. 214 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 174, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

F482 215 .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F482 S. 215 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 174, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Offences etc.*

**216 Enforcement: powers and duties.**

- (1) Without prejudice to its powers of enforcement in relation to the other provisions of this Act, it shall be the duty of the [<sup>F483</sup>Agency] to enforce the provisions to which this section applies.
- (2) No proceedings for any offence under any provision to which this section applies shall be instituted except—
  - (a) by the [<sup>F483</sup>Agency]; or
  - (b) by, or with the consent of, the Director of Public Prosecutions.
- (3) This section applies to Chapter II of Part II of this Act and the related water resources provisions.

**Textual Amendments**

**F483** Words in s. 216 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C146** S. 216 applied (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 33(3)(d), 105(3)**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(p)

**217 Criminal liabilities of directors and other third parties.**

- (1) Where a body corporate is guilty of an offence under this Act [<sup>F484</sup>or under section 4 of the Water Act 2003 ] and that offence is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, any director, manager, secretary or other similar officer of the body corporate or any person who was purporting to act in any such capacity, then he, as well as the body corporate, shall be guilty of that offence and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (2) Where the affairs of a body corporate are managed by its members, subsection (1) above shall apply in relation to the acts and defaults of a member in connection with his functions of management as if he were a director of the body corporate.
- (3) Without prejudice to subsections (1) and (2) above, where the commission by any person of an offence under the water pollution provisions of this Act is due to the act or default of some other person, that other person may be charged with and convicted of the offence whether or not proceedings for the offence are taken against the first-mentioned person.

**Textual Amendments**

**F484** Words in s. 217(1) inserted (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), Sch. 7 para. 12**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(s)(i)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Judicial disqualification

<sup>F485</sup>218 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F485** S. 218 repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 175, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

### Powers to make regulations

#### 219 Powers to make regulations.

- (1) Any power of one or both of the Ministers to make regulations under any provision of this Act shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject (except in the case of regulations made by virtue of paragraph 1(3) of Schedule 15 to this Act) to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (2) <sup>F486</sup> . . . The provisions of any regulations made by one or both the Ministers under this Act may include-
  - (a) provision for any duty or other requirement imposed by the regulations on a water undertaker or sewerage undertaker to be enforceable under section 18 of the <sup>M100</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 by the Secretary of State, by [<sup>F487</sup> the Water Services Regulation Authority ] or by either of them;
  - (b) provision, where such a duty or requirement is so enforceable by either of them, for enforcement by [<sup>F488</sup> the Water Services Regulation Authority ] to be subject to such consent or authorisation as may be prescribed;
  - (c) provision which, in relation to the furnishing of any information or the making of any application under the regulations, makes provision corresponding to section 206(1) and (5) above;
  - (d) provision for anything that may be prescribed by the regulations to be determined under the regulations and for anything falling to be so determined to be determined by such persons, in accordance with such procedure and by reference to such matters, and to the opinion of such persons, as may be prescribed;
  - (e) different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities; and
  - (f) such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the Minister or Ministers exercising the power considers or consider appropriate.

<sup>F489</sup>(3) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F486** Words in s. 219(2) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 176(a), **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

**F487** Words in s. 219(2)(a) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(4)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 4(f)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)

**F488** Words in s. 219(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 28(4)**; S.I. 2005/2714, **art. 4(f)** (with **Sch. para. 8**)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F489** S. 219(3) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), Sch. 22 para. 176(b), **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M100** 1991 c. 56.

### *Construction of Act*

#### **220 Provisions relating to service of documents.**

- (1) Any document required or authorised by virtue of this Act to be served on any person may be served—
  - (a) by delivering it to him or by leaving it at his proper address or by sending it by post to him at that address; or
  - (b) if the person is a body corporate, by serving it in accordance with paragraph (a) above on the secretary or clerk of that body; or
  - (c) if the person is a partnership, by serving it in accordance with paragraph (a) above on a partner or a person having the control or management of the partnership business.
- (2) For the purposes of this section and section 7 of the <sup>M101</sup>Interpretation Act 1978 (which relates to the service of documents by post) in its application to this section, the proper address of any person on whom a document is to be served shall be his last known address, except that—
  - (a) in the case of service on a body corporate or its secretary or clerk, it shall be the address of the registered or principal office of the body;
  - (b) in the case of service on a partnership or a partner or a person having the control or management of a partnership business, it shall be the address of the principal office of the partnership;

and for the purposes of this subsection the principal office of a company registered outside the United Kingdom, or of a partnership carrying on business outside the United Kingdom, is its principal office within the United Kingdom.
- (3) If a person to be served by virtue of this Act with any document by another has specified to that other an address within the United Kingdom other than his proper address (as determined in pursuance of subsection (2) above) as the one at which he or someone on his behalf will accept documents of the same description as that document, that address shall also be treated as his proper address for the purposes of this section and for the purposes of the said section 7 in its application to this section.
- (4) Where under any provision of this Act any document is required to be served on the owner, on a lessee or on the occupier of any premises then—
  - (a) if the name or address of the owner, of the lessee or, as the case may be, of the occupier of the premises cannot after reasonable inquiry be ascertained; or
  - (b) in the case of service on the occupier, if the premises appear to be or are unoccupied,

that document may be served either by leaving it in the hands of a person who is or appears to be resident or employed on the land or by leaving it conspicuously affixed to some building or object on the land.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(5) This section shall not apply to any document in relation to the service of which provision is made by rules of court.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C147 S. 220 applied (21.7.1994) by 1994 c. xiii, s. 29(4)

C148 S. 220 applied (1.4.2006) by Water Act 2003 (c. 37), ss. 33(4), 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(p)

**Marginal Citations**

M101 1978 c. 30.

**221 General interpretation.**

(1) In this Act, except in so far as the context otherwise requires—

[<sup>F490</sup>“the 1995 Act” means the Environment Act 1995;]

“abstraction”, in relation to water contained in any source of supply, means the doing of anything whereby any of that water is removed from that source of supply, whether temporarily or permanently, including anything whereby the water is so removed for the purpose of being transferred to another source of supply; and “abstract” shall be construed accordingly;

“accessories”, in relation to a main, sewer or other pipe, includes any manholes, ventilating shafts, inspection chambers, settling tanks, wash-out pipes, pumps, ferrules or stopcocks for the main, sewer or other pipe, or any machinery or other apparatus which is designed or adapted for use in connection with the use or maintenance of the main, sewer or other pipe or of another accessory for it, but does not include any [<sup>F491</sup>“electronic communications apparatus”] unless it—

- (a) is or is to be situated inside or in the close vicinity of the main, sewer or other pipe or inside or in the close vicinity of another accessory for it; and
- (b) is intended to be used only in connection with the use or maintenance of the main, sewer or other pipe or of another accessory for it;

and in this definition “stopcock” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M102</sup>Water Industry Act 1991;

[<sup>F492</sup>“the Agency” means the Environment Agency;]

“agriculture” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M103</sup>Agriculture Act 1947 and “agricultural” shall be construed accordingly;

“analyse”, in relation to any sample of land, water or effluent, includes subjecting the sample to a test of any description, and cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly;

<sup>F493</sup> .....

“conservancy authority” means any person who has a duty or power under any enactment to conserve, maintain or improve the navigation of a tidal water and is not a navigation authority or harbour authority;

<sup>F494</sup> .....

“contravention” includes a failure to comply, and cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“damage”, in relation to individuals, includes death and any personal injury (including any disease or impairment of physical or mental condition);

“discrete waters” means inland waters so far as they comprise—

- (a) a lake, pond or reservoir which does not discharge to any other inland waters; or
- (b) one of a group of two or more lakes, ponds or reservoirs (whether near to or distant from each other) and of watercourses or mains connecting them, where none of the inland waters in the group discharges to any inland waters outside the group;

“disposal”—

- (a) in relation to land or any interest or right in or over land, includes the creation of such an interest or right and a disposal effected by means of the surrender or other termination of any such interest or right; and
- (b) in relation to sewage, includes treatment;

and cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly;

“drain” has, subject to subsection (2) below, the same meaning as in the <sup>M104</sup>Water Industry Act 1991;

“drainage” in the expression “drainage works” has the meaning given by section 113 above for the purposes of Part IV of this Act;

“drought order” means an ordinary drought order under subsection (1) of section 73 above or an emergency drought order under subsection (2) of that section;

“effluent” means any liquid, including particles of matter and other substances in suspension in the liquid;

“enactment” includes an enactment contained in this Act or in any Act passed after this Act;

<sup>F495</sup>

“engineering or building operations”, without prejudice to the generality of that expression, includes—

- (a) the construction, alteration, improvement, maintenance or demolition of any building or structure or of any reservoir, watercourse, dam, weir, well, borehole or other works; and
- (b) the installation, modification or removal of any machinery or apparatus;

“financial year” means the twelve months ending with 31st March;

[<sup>F496</sup>“environmental permit” has the same meaning as in the Environmental Permitting Regulations;

“Environmental Permitting Regulations” means the Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010;]

[<sup>F497</sup>“flood defence functions”, in relation to the Agency, means—

- (a) its functions with respect to flood defence and land drainage by virtue of Part IV of this Act, the <sup>M105</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 and section 6 of the 1995 Act;
- (b) those functions transferred to the Agency by section 2(1)(a)(iii) of the 1995 Act which were previously transferred to the Authority by virtue of section 136(8) of the <sup>M106</sup>Water Act 1989 and paragraph 1(3) of Schedule 15 to that Act (transfer of land drainage functions under local statutory provisions and subordinate legislation); and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(c) any other functions of the Agency under any of the flood defence provisions of this Act;]

[<sup>F498</sup>“flood defence provisions”, in relation to this Act, means—

(a) any of the following provisions of this Act, that is to say—

(i) Part IV;

(ii) sections 133 to 141 (including Schedule 15), 143, <sup>F499</sup>... 155, 165 to 167, 180, 193, 194 and paragraph 5 of Schedule 25;

(b) any of the following provisions of the 1995 Act, that is to say—

(i) section 6(4) (general supervision of flood defence);

(ii) section 53 (inquiries and other hearings); and

(iii) Schedule 5 (membership and proceedings of regional and local flood defence committees); and

(c) any other provision of this Act or the 1995 Act so far as it relates to a provision falling within paragraph (a) or (b) above;]

“harbour” has the same meaning for the purposes of the flood defence provisions of this Act as in [<sup>F500</sup>section 313 of the Merchant Shipping Act 1995];

“harbour authority” (except in the flood defence provisions of this Act, in which it has the same meaning as in [<sup>F501</sup>section 313 of the Merchant Shipping Act 1995]) means a person who is a harbour authority [<sup>F501</sup>as defined in section 151 for the purposes of Chapter II of Part VI of that Act] and is not a navigation authority;

“highway” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M107</sup>Highways Act 1980;

“information” includes anything contained in any records, accounts, estimates or returns;

“inland waters” means the whole or any part of—

(a) any river, stream or other watercourse (within the meaning of Chapter II of Part II of this Act), whether natural or artificial and whether tidal or not;

(b) any lake or pond, whether natural or artificial, or any reservoir or dock, in so far as the lake, pond, reservoir or dock does not fall within paragraph (a) of this definition; and

(c) so much of any channel, creek, bay, estuary or arm of the sea as does not fall within paragraph (a) or (b) of this definition;

“joint planning board” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M108</sup>Town and Country Planning Act 1990;

“local authority” means the council of any county, [<sup>F502</sup>county borough,] district or London borough or the Common Council of the City of London;

“local statutory provision” means—

(a) a provision of a local Act (including an Act confirming a provisional order);

(b) a provision of so much of any public general Act as has effect with respect to a particular area, with respect to particular persons or works or with respect to particular provisions falling within any paragraph of this definition;

(c) a provision of an instrument made under any provision falling within paragraph (a) or (b) above; or

(d) a provision of any other instrument which is in the nature of a local enactment;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“main river” means a main river within the meaning of Part IV of this Act;

“main river map” has, subject to section 194 above, the meaning given by section 193(2) above;

“micro-organism” includes any microscopic, biological entity which is capable of replication;

“minimum acceptable flow”, in relation to any inland waters, means (except in sections 21 and 22 above and subject to section 23(3) above) the minimum acceptable flow as for the time being contained in provisions which are in force under section 21(7) above in relation to those waters;

“the Minister” means the Minister of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food;

“the Ministers” means the Secretary of State and the Minister;

“modifications” includes additions, alterations and omissions, and cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly;

“mortgage” includes any charge or lien on any property for securing money or money’s worth, and “mortgagee” shall be construed accordingly;

“navigation authority” means any person who has a duty or power under any enactment to work, maintain, conserve, improve or control any canal or other inland navigation, navigable river, estuary, harbour or dock;

“notice” means notice in writing;

“owner”, in relation to any premises, means the person who—

- (a) is for the time being receiving the rack-rent of the premises, whether on his own account or as agent or trustee for another person; or
- (b) would receive the rack-rent if the premises were let at a rack-rent,

but for the purposes of Schedule 2 to this Act, Chapter II of Part II of this Act and the related water resources provisions does not include a mortgagee not in possession, and cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly;

“prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made by the Secretary of State or, in relation to regulations made by the Minister, by those regulations;

“public authority” means any Minister of the Crown or government department, the <sup>F503</sup>Agency], any local authority or any person certified by the Secretary of State to be a public authority for the purposes of this Act;

“public sewer” means a sewer for the time being vested in a sewerage undertaker in its capacity as such, whether vested in that undertaker by virtue of a scheme under Schedule 2 to the <sup>M109</sup>Water Act 1989, section 179 of or Schedule 2 to the <sup>M110</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 or otherwise;

“records” includes computer records and any other records kept otherwise than in a document;

<sup>F504</sup>“the related water resources provisions”, in relation to Chapter II of Part II of this Act, means—

- (a) the following provisions of this Act, that is to say, the provisions—
  - (i) of sections 21 to 23 (including Schedule 5);
  - (ii) of sections 120, 125 to 130, 158, 189, 199 to 201, 206(3), 209(3), 211(1) and 216; and
  - (iii) of paragraph 1 of Schedule 25; and
- (b) the following provisions of the 1995 Act, that is to say, the provisions—
  - (i) of sections 41 and 42 (charging schemes) as they have effect by virtue of subsection (1)(a) of section 41 (licences under Chapter II of Part II of this Act); and



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(ii) of subsections (1) and (2) of section 53 (inquiries and other hearings);]

“sewage effluent” includes any effluent from the sewage disposal or sewerage works of a sewerage undertaker but does not include surface water;

“sewer” has, subject to subsection (2) below, the same meaning as in the Water Industry Act 1991;

“source of supply” means—

(a) any inland waters except, without prejudice to subsection (3) below in its application to paragraph (b) of this definition, any which are discrete waters; or

(b) any underground strata in which water is or at any time may be contained;

“street” has, subject to subsection (4) below, the same meaning as in Part III of the <sup>M111</sup>New Roads and Street Works 1991;

“subordinate legislation” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M112</sup>Interpretation Act 1978;

“substance” includes micro-organisms and any natural or artificial substance or other matter, whether it is in solid or liquid form or in the form of a gas or vapour;

“surface water” includes water from roofs;

“trade effluent” includes any effluent which is discharged from premises used for carrying on any trade or industry, other than surface water and domestic sewage, and for the purposes of this definition any premises wholly or mainly used (whether for profit or not) for agricultural purposes or for the purposes of fish farming or for scientific research or experiment shall be deemed to be premises used for carrying on a trade;

“underground strata” means strata subjacent to the surface of any land;

“vessel” includes a hovercraft within the meaning of the <sup>M113</sup>Hovercraft Act 1968;

“watercourse” includes (subject to sections 72(2) and 113(1) above) all rivers, streams, ditches, drains, cuts, culverts, dykes, sluices, sewers and passages through which water flows, except mains and other pipes which—

(a) belong to the [<sup>F503</sup>Agency] or a water undertaker; or

(b) are used by a water undertaker or any other person for the purpose only of providing a supply of water to any premises;

“water pollution provisions”, in relation to this Act, means the following provisions of this Act—

(a) the provisions of Part III of this Act;

(b) sections 161 [<sup>F505</sup>to 161D], 190, 202, [<sup>F506</sup>and 203] above; and

(c) paragraph 4 of Schedule 25 to this Act and section 211 above so far as it relates to byelaws made under that paragraph.

[<sup>F507</sup>and the following provisions of the 1995 Act, that is to say, the provisions of subsections (1) and (2) of section 53.]

- (2) References in this Act to a pipe, including references to a main, a drain or a sewer, shall include references to a tunnel or conduit which serves or is to serve as the pipe in question and to any accessories for the pipe; and, accordingly, references to the laying of a pipe shall include references to the construction of such a tunnel or conduit, to the

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

construction or installation of any such accessories and to the making of a connection between one pipe and another.

- (3) Any reference in this Act to water contained in underground strata is a reference to water so contained otherwise than in a sewer, pipe, reservoir, tank or other underground works constructed in any such strata; but for the purposes of this Act water for the time being contained in—
  - (a) a well, borehole or similar work, including any adit or passage constructed in connection with the well, borehole or work for facilitating the collection of water in the well, borehole or work; or
  - (b) any excavation into underground strata, where the level of water in the excavation depends wholly or mainly on water entering it from those strata, shall be treated as water contained in the underground strata into which the well, borehole or work was sunk or, as the case may be, the excavation was made.
- (4) Until the coming into force of Part III of the <sup>M114</sup>New Roads and Street Works Act 1991, the definition of “street” in subsection (1) above shall have effect as if the reference to that Part were a reference to the <sup>M115</sup>Public Utilities Street Works Act 1950; but nothing in this section shall be taken—
  - (a) to prejudice the power of the Secretary of State under that Act of 1991 to make an order bringing Part III of that Act into force on different days for different purposes (including the purposes of this section); or
  - (b) in the period before the coming into force of that Part, to prevent references in this Act to a street, where the street is a highway which passes over a bridge or through a tunnel, from including that bridge or tunnel.
- (5) For the purposes of any provision of this Act by or under which power is or may be conferred on any person to recover the expenses incurred by that person in doing anything, those expenses shall be assumed to include such sum as may be reasonable in respect of establishment charges or overheads.
- (6) References in this Act to the later or latest of two or more different times or days are, in a case where those times or days coincide, references to the time at which or, as the case may be, the day on which they coincide.
- (7) For the purposes of this Act—
  - (a) references in this Act to more than one Minister of the Crown, in relation to anything falling to be done by those Ministers, are references to those Ministers acting jointly; and
  - (b) any provision of this Act by virtue of which any function of a Minister of the Crown is exercisable concurrently by different Ministers, shall have effect as providing for that function also to be exercisable jointly by any two or more of those Ministers.
- (8) Sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 1 of Schedule 2 to the <sup>M116</sup>Water Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1991 has effect (by virtue of sub-paragraph (2)(b) of that paragraph) so that references in this Act to things done under or for the purposes of provisions of this Act, the <sup>M117</sup>Water Industry Act 1991 or the <sup>M118</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 include references to things done, or treated as done, under or for the purposes of the corresponding provisions of the law in force before the commencement of this Act.
- (9) Subject to any provision to the contrary which is contained in Schedule 26 to the <sup>M119</sup>Water Act 1989 or in the <sup>M120</sup>Water Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1991, nothing in any local statutory provision passed or made before 1st September

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

1989 shall be construed as relieving any water undertaker or sewerage undertaker from any liability arising by virtue of this Act in respect of any act or omission occurring on or after that date.

### Textual Amendments

- F490** Words in s. 221(1) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(2)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F491** Words in s. 221 substituted (25.7.2003 for specified purposes, 29.12.2003 in so far as not already in force) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 17 para. 113** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/1900, **arts. 1(2), 2(1)**, **Sch. 1** (with art. 3) (as amended by S.I. 2003/3142, art. 1(3)); S.I. 2003/3142, **art. 3(2)** (with art. 11)
- F492** Words in s. 221(1) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(3)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F493** Words in s. 221(1) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), **Sch. 22 para. 177(4)**, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F494** Words in s. 221(1) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1)(3), **Sch. 22 para. 177(5)**, **Sch. 24** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F495** Words in s. 221 repealed (6.4.2010) by **The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675)**, reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(10)(b)**, **Sch. 28** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F496** Words in s. 221 inserted (6.4.2010) by **The Environmental Permitting (England and Wales) Regulations 2010 (S.I. 2010/675)**, reg. 1(1)(b), **Sch. 26 para. 8(10)(a)** (with reg. 1(2), Sch. 4)
- F497** Words in s. 221(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(7)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F498** Words in s. 221(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(8)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F499** Words in s. 221(1) repealed (17.3.2004 for E., 1.4.2004 for W.) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, ss. 69(4), 105(3), **Sch. 9 Pt. 3**; S.I. 2004/641, art. 2(a)(d); S.I. 2004/910, art. 2(1)(b)
- F500** Words in s. 221(1) substituted (1.1.1996) by 1995 c. 21, ss. 314(2), 316(2), **Sch. 13 para. 90(a)** (with s. 312(1))
- F501** Words in s. 221(1) substituted (1.1.1996) by 1995 c. 21, ss. 314(2), 316(2), **Sch. 13 para. 90(b)** (with s. 312(1))
- F502** Words in s. 221(1) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 22(5), **Sch. 11 Pt. I para. 3(6)** (with ss. 54(4), 55(5), **Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)**); S.I. 1996/396, art. 3, **Sch. 1**
- F503** Words in s. 221 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F504** Words in s. 221(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(9)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F505** Words in s. 221(1) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(10)(a)(i)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F506** Words in s. 221(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(10)(a)(ii)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)
- F507** Words in s. 221(1) added (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120(1), **Sch. 22 para. 177(10)(b)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3** (with art. 4)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C149** S. 221 applied (1.4.2004) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, **ss. 27(3)**, 105(3); S.I. 2004/641, art. 3(i) (with **Sch. 3 para. 7**)
- C150** S. 221(1): definition applied (01.12.1991) by **Land Drainage Act 1991 (c. 59)**, SIF 73:1, **ss. 61(2)**, 67(2)(6), 76(2).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Marginal Citations**

- M102** 1991 c. 56.
- M103** 1947 c. 48.
- M104** 1991 c. 56.
- M105** 1991 c. 59.
- M106** 1989 c. 15.
- M107** 1980 c. 66.
- M108** 1990 c. 8.
- M109** 1989 c. 15.
- M110** 1991 c. 56.
- M111** 1991 c. 22.
- M112** 1978 c. 30.
- M113** 1968 c. 59.
- M114** 1991 c. 22.
- M115** 1950 c. 39.
- M116** 1991 c. 60.
- M117** 1991 c. 56.
- M118** 1991 c. 59.
- M119** 1989 c. 15.
- M120** 1991 c. 60.

### *Other supplemental provisions*

#### **[<sup>F508</sup>222 Crown application.**

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this section, this Act binds the Crown.
- (2) No contravention by the Crown of any provision made by or under this Act shall make the Crown criminally liable; but the High Court may, on the application of the Agency, declare unlawful any act or omission of the Crown which constitutes such a contravention.
- (3) Notwithstanding anything in subsection (2) above, the provisions of this Act shall apply to persons in the public service of the Crown as they apply to other persons.
- (4) If the Secretary of State certifies that it appears to him, as respects any Crown premises and any powers of entry exercisable in relation to them specified in the certificate, that it is requisite or expedient that, in the interests of national security, the powers should not be exercisable in relation to those premises, those powers shall not be exercisable in relation to those premises.
- (5) Subject to subsection (4) above, the powers conferred by sections 154, 156, 160, 162(3) and 168 above shall be exercisable in relation to land in which there is a Crown or Duchy interest only with the consent of the appropriate authority.
- (6) Nothing in this section shall be taken as in any way affecting Her Majesty in her private capacity; and this subsection shall be construed as if section 38(3) of the <sup>M121</sup>Crown Proceedings Act 1947 (interpretation of references to Her Majesty in her private capacity) were contained in this Act.
- (7) Nothing in this Act, as read with the other provisions of this section, shall be construed as conferring any power of levying drainage charges in respect of lands below the high-water mark of ordinary spring tides.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(8) Section 74 of the <sup>M122</sup>Land Drainage Act 1991 (Crown application), so far as it relates to land in which there is a Crown or Duchy interest, shall apply in relation to the flood defence provisions of this Act as it applies in relation to that Act; but nothing in this subsection shall affect any power conferred by this Act for the purposes both of the Agency’s functions under those provisions and of other functions of the Agency.

(9) In this section—

“the appropriate authority” has the same meaning as it has in Part XIII of the <sup>M123</sup>Town and Country Planning Act 1990 by virtue of section 293(2) of that Act;

“Crown or Duchy interest” means an interest which belongs to Her Majesty in right of the Crown or of the Duchy of Lancaster, or to the Duchy of Cornwall, or belonging to a government department or held in trust for Her Majesty for the purposes of a government department;

“Crown premises” means premises held by or on behalf of the Crown.

(10) The provisions of subsection (3) of section 293 of the <sup>M124</sup>Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (questions relating to Crown application) as to the determination of questions shall apply for the purposes of this section.

[ This section shall apply in relation to sections 3, 4 and 10 of the Water Act 2003 as it <sup>F509</sup>(11) applies in relation to the provisions of this Act.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F508** S. 222 substituted (1.7.1997 for certain purposes and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1995 c. 25, ss. 116, 125(2), **Sch. 21 Pt. I para. 2(4)** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1997/1626, **art. 2** (with transitional provisions in art. 3)

**F509** S. 222(11) added (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, s. 105(3), **Sch. 7 para. 13**; S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(s)(i)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C151** S. 222 (as in force immediately before the substitution made by 1995 c. 25, Sch. 21 para. 2(4) and for so long as the substituted s. 222 does not apply to Pt. 2 of this Act) applied (1.4.2006) by **Water Act 2003 (c. 37)**, **ss. 33(3)(e)**, 105(3); S.I. 2006/984, art. 2(p)

#### Marginal Citations

**M121** 1947 c. 44.

**M122** 1991 c. 59.

**M123** 1990 c. 8.

**M124** 1990 c. 8.

## 223 Exemption for visiting forces.

(1) Chapter II of Part II of this Act and the related water resources provisions shall not apply—

- (a) to anything done by a member of a visiting force in his capacity as a member of that force; or
- (b) to any land occupied by or for the purposes of a visiting force.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) In this section “visiting force” means any such body, contingent or detachment of the forces of any country as is a visiting force for the purposes of any of the provisions of the <sup>M125</sup>Visiting Forces Act 1952.

#### Marginal Citations

<sup>M125</sup> 1952 c. 67.

#### [<sup>F510</sup>224 Application to the Isles of Scilly.

- (1) Subject to the provisions of any order under this section, this Act shall not apply in relation to the Isles of Scilly.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, after consultation with the Council of the Isles of Scilly, by order provide for the application of any provisions of this Act to the Isles of Scilly; and any such order may provide for the application of those provisions to those Isles with such modifications as may be specified in the order.
- (3) An order under this section may—
- (a) make different provision for different cases, including different provision in relation to different persons, circumstances or localities; and
  - (b) contain such supplemental, consequential and transitional provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, including provision saving provision repealed by or under any enactment.
- (4) The power of the Secretary of State to make an order under this section shall be exercisable by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F510** S. 224 substituted (1.2.1996 in so far as it confers power to make an order or make provision in relation to the exercise of that power and 1.4.2020 in so far as not already in force) by 1995 c. 25, ss. 118(5), 125(2) (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, art. 2 (with art. 4); S.I. 2020/216, art. 2

#### 225 Short title, commencement and extent.

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Water Resources Act 1991.
- (2) This Act shall come into force on 1st December 1991.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) to (6) of section 2 and to section 224 above, to the extension of section 166(3) above to Scotland and to the extension, by virtue of any other enactment, of any provision of this Act to the territorial sea, this Act extends to England and Wales only.
- (4) Nothing in this Act, so far as it extends to Scotland, shall authorise the [<sup>F511</sup>Agency] to acquire any land in Scotland compulsorily.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F511** Word in s. 225 substituted (subject to other provisions of the amending Act) (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 25, s. 120, **Sch. 22 para. 128** (with ss. 7(6), 115, 117); S.I. 1996/186, **art. 3**



**Status:**

Point in time view as at 01/10/2011.

**Changes to legislation:**

Water Resources Act 1991 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 18 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.